

# Veritas Storage Foundation™ and High Availability Solutions HA and Disaster Recovery Solutions Guide for Microsoft SQL 2000 and 2005

Windows Server 2003  
Windows Server 2008

5.1 Service Pack 1



# Veritas Storage Foundation and HA Solutions HA and Disaster Recovery Solutions Guide for Microsoft SQL 2000 and 2005

The software described in this book is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement.

Product version: 5.1. Service Pack 1

Document version: 5.1.SP1.0

## Legal Notice

Copyright © 2009 Symantec Corporation. All rights reserved.

Symantec, the Symantec Logo, Veritas, and Veritas Storage Foundation are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symantec Corporation or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This Symantec product may contain third party software for which Symantec is required to provide attribution to the third party ("Third Party Programs"). Some of the Third Party Programs are available under open source or free software licenses. The License Agreement accompanying the Software does not alter any rights or obligations you may have under those open source or free software licenses. Please see the Third Party Legal Notice file accompanying this Symantec product for more information on the Third Party Programs.

The product described in this document is distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution, and decompilation/reverse engineering. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Symantec Corporation and its licensors, if any.

THE DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID. SYMANTEC CORPORATION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE.

The Licensed Software and Documentation are deemed to be commercial computer software as defined in FAR 12.212 and subject to restricted rights as defined in FAR Section 52.227-19 "Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights" and DFARS 227.7202, "Rights in Commercial Computer Software or Commercial Computer Software Documentation", as applicable, and any successor regulations. Any use, modification, reproduction release, performance, display or disclosure of the Licensed Software and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be solely in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.

Symantec Corporation  
350 Ellis Street  
Mountain View, CA 94043  
<http://www.symantec.com>

# Technical Support

Symantec Technical Support maintains support centers globally. Technical Support's primary role is to respond to specific queries about product features and functionality. The Technical Support group also creates content for our online Knowledge Base. The Technical Support group works collaboratively with the other functional areas within Symantec to answer your questions in a timely fashion. For example, the Technical Support group works with Product Engineering and Symantec Security Response to provide alerting services and virus definition updates.

Symantec's maintenance offerings include the following:

- A range of support options that give you the flexibility to select the right amount of service for any size organization
- Telephone and Web-based support that provides rapid response and up-to-the-minute information
- Upgrade assurance that delivers automatic software upgrade protection
- Global support that is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week
- Advanced features, including Account Management Services

For information about Symantec's Maintenance Programs, you can visit our Web site at the following URL:

<http://www.symantec.com/business/support/index.jsp>

## Contacting Technical Support

Customers with a current maintenance agreement may access Technical Support information at the following URL:

[http://www.symantec.com/business/support/contact\\_techsupp\\_static.jsp](http://www.symantec.com/business/support/contact_techsupp_static.jsp)

Before contacting Technical Support, make sure you have satisfied the system requirements that are listed in your product documentation. Also, you should be at the computer on which the problem occurred, in case it is necessary to replicate the problem.

When you contact Technical Support, please have the following information available:

- Product release level
- Hardware information
- Available memory, disk space, and NIC information
- Operating system
- Version and patch level
- Network topology
- Router, gateway, and IP address information
- Problem description:

- Error messages and log files
- Troubleshooting that was performed before contacting Symantec
- Recent software configuration changes and network changes

## Licensing and registration

If your Symantec product requires registration or a license key, access our technical support Web page at the following URL:

<http://customercare.symantec.com>

## Customer service

Customer service information is available at the following URL:

<http://customercare.symantec.com>

Customer Service is available to assist with the following types of issues:

- Questions regarding product licensing or serialization
- Product registration updates, such as address or name changes
- General product information (features, language availability, local dealers)
- Latest information about product updates and upgrades
- Information about upgrade assurance and maintenance contracts
- Information about the Symantec Buying Programs
- Advice about Symantec's technical support options
- Nontechnical presales questions
- Issues that are related to CD-ROMs or manuals

## Maintenance agreement resources

If you want to contact Symantec regarding an existing maintenance agreement, please contact the maintenance agreement administration team for your region as follows:

Asia-Pacific and Japan [customercare\\_apac@symantec.com](mailto:customercare_apac@symantec.com)

Europe, Middle-East, and Africa [semea@symantec.com](mailto:semea@symantec.com)

North America and Latin America [supportsolutions@symantec.com](mailto:supportsolutions@symantec.com)

## Additional enterprise services

Symantec offers a comprehensive set of services that allow you to maximize your investment in Symantec products and to develop your knowledge, expertise, and global insight, which enable you to manage your business risks proactively.

Enterprise services that are available include the following:

- Symantec Early Warning Solutions These solutions provide early warning of cyber attacks, comprehensive threat analysis, and countermeasures to prevent attacks before they occur.
- Managed Security Services These services remove the burden of managing and monitoring security devices and events, ensuring rapid response to real threats.
- Consulting Services Symantec Consulting Services provide on-site technical expertise from Symantec and its trusted partners. Symantec Consulting Services offer a variety of prepackaged and customizable options that include assessment, design, implementation, monitoring, and management capabilities. Each is focused on establishing and maintaining the integrity and availability of your IT resources.
- Educational Services Educational Services provide a full array of technical training, security education, security certification, and awareness communication programs.

To access more information about Enterprise services, please visit our Web site at the following URL:

[www.symantec.com](http://www.symantec.com)

Select your country or language from the site index.

# Contents

## Section 1 Introduction and Concepts

### Chapter 1 Introducing Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server

About clustering solutions with SFW HA .....	18
About high availability .....	18
How a high availability solution works .....	19
About campus clusters .....	19
Differences between campus clusters and local clusters .....	20
Sample campus cluster configuration .....	20
What you can do with a campus cluster .....	21
About replication .....	22
About a replicated data cluster .....	22
How VCS replicated data clusters work .....	24
About disaster recovery .....	25
What you can do with a disaster recovery solution .....	25
What must be protected in an SQL Server environment .....	26
Running SQL Server in an active-active clustered environment .....	26
Typical SQL Server configuration in a VCS cluster .....	27
Typical SQL Server disaster recovery configuration .....	28
Where to get more information about Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server .....	29

## Section 2 Configuration Workflows

### Chapter 2 Configuration workflows for SQL Server

About using the workflow tables .....	33
High availability (HA) configuration (New Server) .....	35
High availability (HA) configuration (Existing Server) .....	38
Tasks for configuring MSDTC for high availability .....	41
VCS campus cluster configuration .....	42
VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration .....	45

Disaster recovery configuration .....	49
DR configuration tasks: Primary site .....	49
DR configuration tasks: Secondary site .....	52

## Chapter 3 Using the Solutions Configuration Center

About the Solutions Configuration Center .....	55
Starting the Configuration Center .....	56
Available options from the Configuration Center .....	57
About running the Configuration Center wizards .....	63
Following the workflow in the Configuration Center .....	64
Solutions wizard logs .....	67

## Section 3 Requirements and Planning

### Chapter 4 Requirements and planning for your HA and DR configurations

Reviewing the requirements .....	72
Disk space requirements .....	72
Requirements for Veritas Storage Foundation High Availability for Windows (SFW HA) .....	72
Supported SQL Server 2000 versions .....	73
Supported SQL Server 2005 versions .....	74
System requirements for SFW HA .....	76
Network requirements for SFW HA .....	76
Permission requirements for SFW HA .....	77
Additional requirements for SFW HA .....	77
Best practices for SFW HA .....	78
Reviewing the prerequisites for a standalone SQL Server .....	79
Reviewing the HA configuration .....	80
Active-Passive configuration .....	80
Sample Active-Passive configuration .....	81
IP addresses for sample Active-Passive configuration .....	81
Active-Active configuration .....	82
Sample Active-Active configuration .....	83
IP addresses for sample Active-Active configuration .....	84
Key information for Active-Active configurations .....	84
Following the HA workflow in the Solutions Configuration Center .....	86
Reviewing a standalone SQL Server configuration .....	86
Sample standalone SQL Server configuration .....	87
Reviewing the MSDTC configuration .....	89

Reviewing the campus cluster configuration .....	92
Campus cluster failover using the ForceImport attribute .....	93
Reinstating faulted hardware in a campus cluster .....	95
Reviewing the Replicated Data Cluster configuration .....	96
Sample replicated data cluster configuration .....	96
About setting up a Replicated Data Cluster configuration .....	98
About setting up replication .....	99
About configuring and migrating the service group .....	99
Reviewing the disaster recovery configuration .....	100
Sample disaster recovery configuration .....	102
IP addresses for sample disaster recovery configuration .....	103
Supported disaster recovery configurations for service group dependencies .....	103

## Section 4 Deployment

### Chapter 5 Installing and configuring SFW HA

Configuring the storage hardware and network .....	108
Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows .....	110
Setting Windows driver signing options .....	110
Installing Symantec Trusted certificate for unsigned drivers .....	111
Installing Storage Foundation HA for Windows .....	112
Resetting the driver signing options .....	115
Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server .....	117
About cluster disk groups and volumes .....	117
Prerequisites for configuring cluster disk groups and volumes .....	118
Considerations for converting existing shared storage to cluster disk groups and volumes .....	119
Considerations for disks and volumes for campus clusters .....	120
Considerations for volumes for a VVR configuration .....	120
Considerations for disk groups and volumes for multiple instances .....	121
Sample disk group and volume configuration .....	122
MSDTC sample disk group and volume configuration .....	123
Viewing the available disk storage .....	123
Creating a cluster disk group .....	123
Creating volumes .....	125
About managing disk groups and volumes .....	130
Importing a disk group and mounting a volume .....	130
Unmounting a volume and deporting a disk group .....	130
Adding drive letters to mount the volumes .....	131
Deporting the cluster disk group .....	132

Configuring the cluster .....	133
Configuring Web console .....	145
Configuring notification .....	146

## Chapter 6 Installing SQL Server

About installing multiple SQL instances .....	152
Verifying that SQL Server databases and logs are moved to shared storage .....	152
Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node .....	153
Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node .....	155
Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node .....	157
Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000 .....	158
Creating a SQL Server user-defined database .....	161
Completing configuration steps in SQL Server .....	162
Moving the tempdb database if using VVR for disaster recovery .....	162
Assigning ports for multiple SQL Server instances .....	162

## Chapter 7 Configuring SQL Server for failover

Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group .....	164
Service group requirements for Active-Active configurations .....	164
Prerequisites for configuring the service group .....	165
Creating the SQL Server service group .....	166
Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration .....	171
Configuring an MSDTC Server service group .....	172
Prerequisites for MSDTC configuration .....	172
Creating an MSDTC Server service group .....	173
About configuring the MSDTC client for SQL Server .....	177
Configuring MSDTC client on Windows 2003 .....	177
Configuring MSDTC client on Windows 2008 .....	178
About the VCS Application Manager utility .....	179
Viewing DTC transaction information .....	179
Modifying a SQL Server service group to add VMDg and MountV resources .....	181
Determining additional steps needed .....	182

## Chapter 8 Configuring campus clusters for SQL Server

Tasks for configuring campus clusters .....	186
Modifying the IP resource in the SQL Server service group .....	186
Verifying the campus cluster: Switching the service group .....	187
Setting the ForceImport attribute to 1 after a site failure .....	188

## Chapter 9

## Configuring Replicated Data Clusters for SQL Server

Tasks for configuring Replicated Data Clusters .....	190
Creating the primary system zone .....	192
Creating a parallel environment in the secondary zone .....	193
Adding the systems in the secondary zone to the cluster .....	194
Setting up security for VVR .....	200
Configuring the VxSAS service .....	200
Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS) .....	203
Prerequisites for setting up the RDS for the primary and secondary zones .....	203
Creating the Replicated Data Sets with the wizard .....	203
Configuring a hybrid RVG service group for replication .....	215
Creating the RVG service group .....	215
Configuring the RVG service group for RDC replication .....	216
Configuring the IP and NIC resources .....	217
Configuring the VMDg resources .....	218
Configuring the VMDg resources for the disk group for the user-defined database .....	220
Adding the VVR RVG resources for the disk groups .....	222
Linking the VVR RVG resources to establish dependencies .....	225
Deleting the VMDg resource from the SQL Server service group .....	226
Configuring the RVGPrimary resources .....	227
Creating the RVG Primary resources .....	227
Linking the RVG Primary resources to establish dependencies .....	228
Bringing the RVG Primary resources online .....	229
Configuring the primary system zone for the RVG .....	230
Setting a dependency between the service groups .....	230
Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC .....	231
Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RVG service group .....	231
Configuring secondary zone nodes in the RVG service group .....	233
Configuring the IP resources for failover .....	234
Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server 2000 or 2005 service group .....	235
Configuring the zones in the SQL Server service group .....	236
Verifying the RDC configuration .....	237
Bringing the service group online .....	237
Switching online nodes .....	237
Additional instructions for GCO disaster recovery .....	238

## Chapter 10 Configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server

Tasks for configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server .....	242
Guidelines for installing SFW HA and configuring the cluster on the secondary site .....	246
Verifying your primary site configuration .....	247
Setting up your replication environment .....	247
Setting up security for VVR .....	248
Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication .....	251
Software requirements for configuring EMC SRDF .....	251
Replication requirements for EMC SRDF .....	251
Requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication .....	252
Software requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy .....	253
Replication requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy .....	253
Assigning user privileges (secure clusters only) .....	255
Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard .....	256
Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (VVR replication option) .....	260
Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (array-based replication) .....	264
Installing and configuring SQL Server on the secondary site .....	268
Cloning the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site .....	268
Configuring replication and global clustering .....	272
Configuring VVR replication and global clustering .....	272
Configuring EMC SRDF replication and global clustering .....	280
Optional settings for EMC SRDF .....	282
Configuring Hitachi TrueCopy replication and global clustering .....	283
Optional settings for HTC .....	286
Configuring global clustering only .....	286
Verifying the disaster recovery configuration .....	288
Establishing secure communication within the global cluster (optional) .....	290
Adding multiple DR sites (optional) .....	292
Recovery procedures for service group dependencies .....	293

Chapter 11	Testing fault readiness by running a fire drill	
	About disaster recovery fire drills .....	297
	About the Fire Drill Wizard .....	298
	About Fire Drill Wizard general operations .....	298
	About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a VVR environment .....	299
	Preparing the fire drill configuration .....	299
	Running the fire drill .....	300
	Restoring the fire drill configuration .....	300
	Deleting the fire drill configuration .....	300
	About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment .....	300
	Preparing the fire drill configuration .....	301
	Running the fire drill .....	301
	Restoring the fire drill configuration .....	302
	Deleting the fire drill configuration .....	302
	About post-fire drill scripts .....	302
	Tasks for configuring and running fire drills .....	304
	Prerequisites for a fire drill .....	306
	Prerequisites for a fire drill in a VVR environment .....	306
	Prerequisites for a fire drill in a Hitachi TrueCopy environment .....	307
	Prerequisites for a fire drill in an EMC SRDF environment .....	308
	Preparing the fire drill configuration .....	309
	System Selection panel details .....	311
	Service Group Selection panel details .....	311
	Secondary System Selection panel details .....	311
	Fire Drill Service Group Settings panel details .....	312
	Disk Selection panel details .....	312
	Hitachi TrueCopy Path Information panel details .....	313
	HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel details .....	313
	SRDFSnap Resource Configuration panel details .....	314
	Fire Drill Preparation panel details .....	314
	Running a fire drill .....	315
	Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed .....	317
	Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state .....	319
	Deleting the fire drill configuration .....	320
	.....	321

## Section 5 Reference

### Appendix A Configuring disaster recovery without the DR wizard

Tasks for configuring disaster recovery without the DR wizard .....	325
Guidelines for installing and configuring SFW HA and the cluster on the secondary site .....	329
Creating a parallel environment on the secondary site .....	330
Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS) .....	331
Prerequisites for setting up the RDS for the primary and secondary zones .....	331
Creating the Replicated Data Sets .....	331
Creating the VVR RVG service group .....	343
Configuring the global cluster option for wide-area failover .....	347
Prerequisites .....	347
Linking clusters: Adding a remote cluster to a local cluster .....	348
Converting a local service group to a global service group .....	349
Bringing a global service group online .....	351

### Index

353

# Introduction and Concepts

This section contains the following chapters:

- [Introducing Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server](#)



# Introducing Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About clustering solutions with SFW HA](#)
- [About high availability](#)
- [How a high availability solution works](#)
- [About campus clusters](#)
- [Differences between campus clusters and local clusters](#)
- [Sample campus cluster configuration](#)
- [What you can do with a campus cluster](#)
- [About replication](#)
- [About a replicated data cluster](#)
- [How VCS replicated data clusters work](#)
- [About disaster recovery](#)
- [What you can do with a disaster recovery solution](#)
- [What must be protected in an SQL Server environment](#)
- [Running SQL Server in an active-active clustered environment](#)
- [Typical SQL Server configuration in a VCS cluster](#)

- [Typical SQL Server disaster recovery configuration](#)
- [Where to get more information about Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server](#)

## About clustering solutions with SFW HA

Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows (SFW HA) provides the following clustering solutions for high availability and disaster recovery:

- High availability failover cluster in an active/passive configuration on the same site
- Campus cluster, in a two-node configuration with each node on a separate site
- Replicated data cluster, with a primary zone and a secondary zone existing within a single cluster, which can stretch over two buildings or data centers connected with Ethernet
- Wide area disaster recovery, with a separate cluster on a secondary site, with replication support using Veritas Volume Replicator or hardware replication

## About high availability

The term high availability refers to a state where data and applications are highly available because software or hardware is in place to maintain the continued functioning in the event of computer failure. High availability can refer to any software or hardware that provides fault tolerance, but generally the term has become associated with clustering.

A cluster is a group of independent computers working together to ensure that mission-critical applications and resources are as highly available as possible. The group is managed as a single system, shares a common namespace, and is specifically designed to tolerate component failures and to support the addition or removal of components in a way that is transparent to users.

Local clustering provides high availability through database and application failover. This solution provides local recovery in the event of application, operating system, or hardware failure, and minimizes planned and unplanned application downtime.

The high availability solution includes procedures for installing and configuring clustered SQL Server environments using Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows (SFW HA). SFW HA includes Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows and Veritas Cluster Server.

Setting up the clustered environment is also the first step in creating a wide-area disaster recovery solution using a secondary site.

## How a high availability solution works

Keeping data and applications functioning 24 hours a day and seven days a week is the desired norm for critical applications today. Clustered systems have several advantages over standalone servers, including fault tolerance, high availability, scalability, simplified management, and support for rolling upgrades.

Using Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows as a local high availability solution paves the way for a wide-area disaster recovery solution in the future.

A high availability solution is built on top of a backup strategy and provides the following benefits:

- Reduces planned and unplanned downtime.
- Serves as a local and wide-area failover (rather than load-balancing) solution. Enables failover between sites or between clusters.
- Manages applications and provides an orderly way to bring processes online and take them offline.
- Consolidates hardware in larger clusters. The HA environment accommodates flexible fail over policies, active-active configurations, and shared standby servers for SQL Server.

## About campus clusters

Campus clusters are clusters in separate buildings (or sites) with mirrored SAN-attached storage located in each building. Typical campus clusters involve two sites; you can use more than two sites for additional redundancy. In a typical configuration, each node has its own storage array and contains mirrored data of the storage on the other array.

Campus clusters are usually located across a campus or a city but can range over much wider distances if their infrastructure supports it, using Fibre Channel SANs and long-wave optical technologies.

This solution provides a level of high availability that is above mirroring or clustering at a single site but is not as complex as disaster recovery with replication.

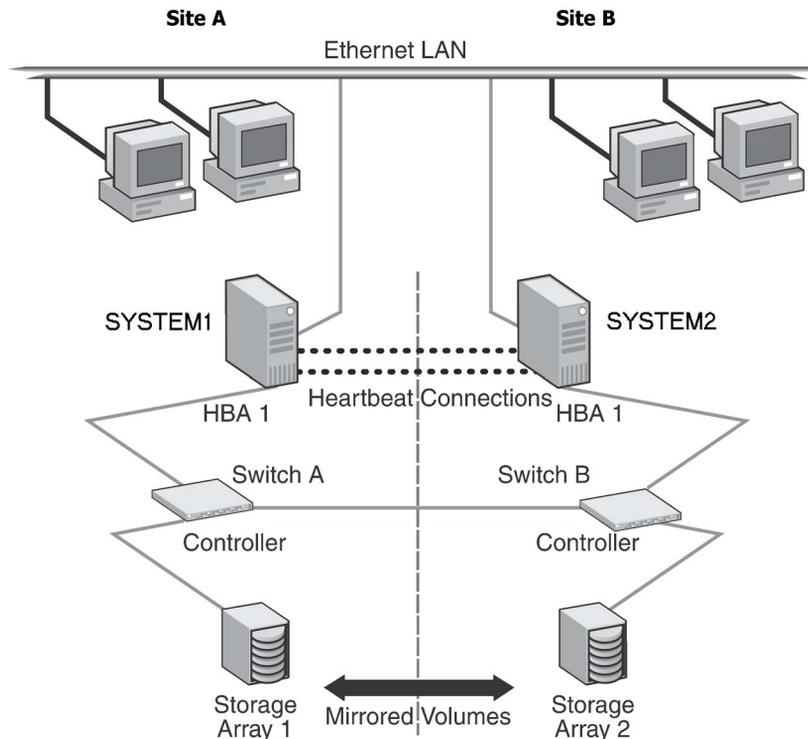
## Differences between campus clusters and local clusters

The procedures for setting up a campus cluster are nearly the same as those for local clusters, except that a campus cluster has the nodes located in separate buildings, so the hardware setup requires SAN interconnects that allows these connections. Also, in a campus cluster, each node has its own storage array rather than having a shared storage array between the two clusters. Both local clusters and campus clusters have SFW dynamic disk groups and volumes, but the volumes on each campus cluster node are mirrors of one another.

## Sample campus cluster configuration

Figure 1-1 shows a sample configuration that represents a campus cluster with two sites, Site A and Site B.

Figure 1-1 Campus cluster: Active-Passive configuration



With SFW, a campus cluster can be set up using a Veritas Cluster Server (VCS) configuration. Both configurations involve setting up a single cluster with two nodes that are in separate buildings and are connected via a single subnet and Fibre Channel SAN. Each node has its own storage array with an equal number of disks and contains mirrored data of the storage on the other array. SFW provides the mirrored storage and the disk groups that make it possible to fail over the storage by deporting the disk groups on one node and importing them on the other.

If a site failure occurs in a two-node campus cluster, the remaining cluster node will not be able to bring the cluster disk groups online because it cannot reserve a majority of disks in the disk groups. To allow for failover to the other site, a procedure forces the import to the other node, allowing a cluster disk group to be brought online on another node when that node has a minority of the cluster disks.

Implementing these force import procedures should be done with care. The primary site may appear to have failed but what really has happened is that both the storage interconnect between sites and the heartbeats have been lost. In that case, cluster disk groups can still be online on the primary node. If a force import is done so that the data can be accessed on the secondary site, the cluster disks will be online on both sites, risking data corruption.

## What you can do with a campus cluster

Administrators can use campus clusters to protect data from natural disasters, such as floods and hurricanes, and unpredictable power outages. Campus clusters provide disaster protection when an entire site goes down.

In the event of a site disaster, such as power failure in a building, campus clusters offer a level of high availability that surpasses mirroring or clustering at a single site by dispersing the clustered servers into different buildings or sites. This environment also provides a simpler solution for disaster recovery than a more elaborate SFW HA DR environment with replication software; however, a campus cluster generally stretches a shorter distance than a replication-based solution depending on the hardware.

## About replication

The term replication refers to the use of a tool or service to automate the process of maintaining a consistent copy of data from a designated source (primary site) on one or more remote locations (secondary sites).

In the event that the primary site data center is destroyed, the application data is readily available at the remote site, and the application can be restarted at the remote site.

SFW HA provides Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) for use in replication. VVR can be used for replication in either a replicated data cluster (RDC) or a wide area disaster recovery solution.

The SFW HA disaster recovery solution also supports hardware replication.

For more information on VVR refer to the *Veritas Volume Replicator, Administrator's Guide*.

## About a replicated data cluster

A Replicated Data Cluster (RDC) uses data replication, instead of shared storage, to assure data access to all the nodes in a cluster.

The Replicated Data Cluster configuration provides both local high availability and disaster recovery functionality in a single VCS cluster. You can set up RDC in a VCS environment using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR.)

An RDC exists within a single VCS cluster with a primary zone and a secondary zone, which can stretch over two buildings or data centers connected with Ethernet. In an RDC configuration, if an application or a system fails, the application is failed over to another system within the current primary zone. If the entire primary zone fails, the application is migrated to a system in the secondary zone (which then becomes the new primary).

For VVR replication to occur, the disk groups containing the Replicated Volume Group (RVG) must be imported at the primary and secondary zones. The replication service group must be online at both zones simultaneously, and must be configured as a hybrid VCS service group.

The SQL Server service group is configured as a failover service group. The SQL Server service group must be configured with an online local hard dependency on the replication service group.

---

**Note:** VVR supports multiple replication secondary targets for any given primary. However, RDC for VCS supports only one replication secondary for a primary.

---

An RDC configuration is appropriate in situations where dual dedicated LLT links are available between the primary zone and the secondary zone but lacks shared storage or SAN interconnect between the primary and secondary data centers. In an RDC, data replication technology is employed to provide node access to data in a remote zone. You must use dual dedicated LLT links between the replicated nodes.

## How VCS replicated data clusters work

To understand how a RDC configuration works, let us take the example of SQL Server configured in a VCS replicated data cluster.

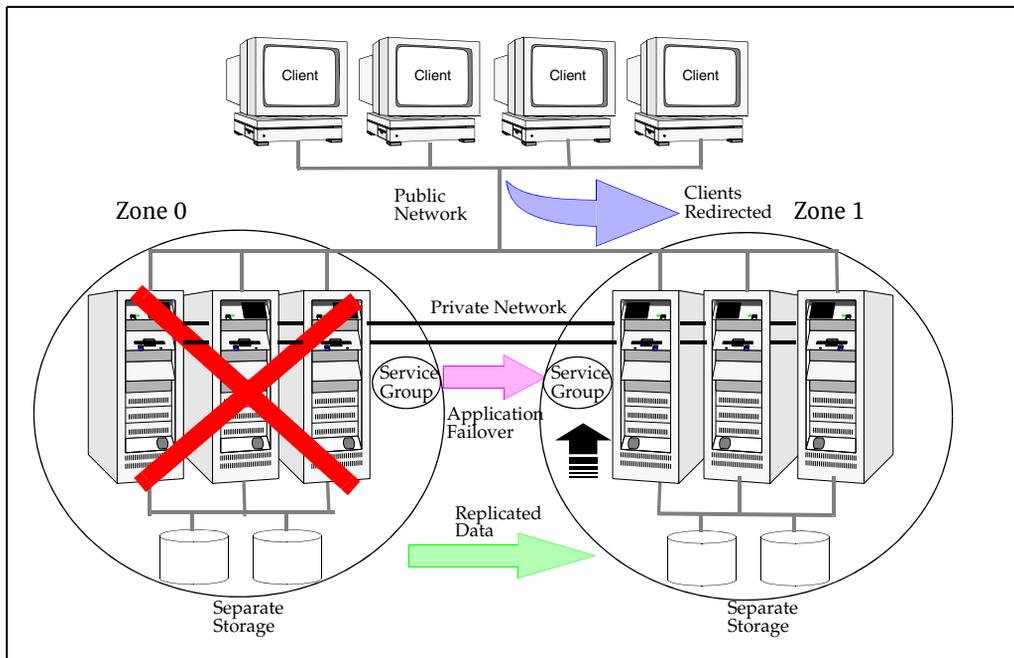
The configuration has the following system zones:

- Primary zone (zone 0) comprising nodes located at the primary site and attached to the primary storage
- Secondary zone (zone 1) comprising nodes located at the secondary site and attached to the secondary storage

SQL Server is installed and configured on all nodes in the cluster. The SQL Server data is located on shared disks within each RDC zone and is replicated across RDC zones to ensure data concurrency. The SQL Server service group is online on a system in the current primary zone and is configured to fail over in the cluster.

Figure 1-2 shows failover in a replicated data cluster.

Figure 1-2 Failover in a replicated data cluster



In the event of a system or SQL Server failure, VCS attempts to fail over the SQL Server service group to another system within the same RDC system zone.

However, in the event that VCS fails to find a failover target node within the primary zone, VCS switches the service group to a node in the current secondary system zone (zone 1). VCS also redirects clients once the application is online on the new location.

## About disaster recovery

Wide area disaster recovery (DR) provides the ultimate protection for data and applications in the event of a disaster. If a disaster affects a local or metropolitan area, data and critical services are failed over to a site hundreds or thousands of miles away. Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows (SFW HA) provides the capability for implementing disaster recovery.

A disaster recovery (DR) solution is a series of procedures which you can use to safely and efficiently restore application user data and services in the event of a catastrophic failure. A typical DR solution requires that you have a source or *primary site* and a destination or *secondary site*. The user application data on the primary site is replicated to the secondary site. The cluster on the primary site provides data and services during normal operations. In the event of a disaster at the primary site and failure of the cluster, the secondary site provides the data and services.

Information about the disaster recovery solution for SQL Server includes procedures for installing, configuring, and testing clustered and replicated Microsoft SQL Server environments for disaster recovery using SFW HA.

## What you can do with a disaster recovery solution

A DR solution is vital for businesses that rely on the availability of data.

A well-designed DR solution prepares a business for unexpected disasters and provides the following benefits in a DR situation:

- Minimizes economic loss due to the unavailability or loss of data.
- Provides a plan for the safe and orderly recovery of data in the event of a disaster.
- Ensures safe and efficient recovery of data and services.
- Minimizes any decision making during DR.
- Reduces the reliance on key individuals.

Strategically planning a DR solution provides businesses with affordable ways to meet their service level agreements, comply with government regulations, and minimize their business risks.

## What must be protected in an SQL Server environment

The following components of a SQL Server environment must be protected in the event of a disaster:

User Databases	The most critical component in any SQL Server implementation is the user data that is stored in user-defined databases.
Logins	Logins allow clients to connect to SQL Server and execute queries on user data. Logins are stored in the master database and each of the user-defined databases.
Jobs	Jobs are a set of scheduled tasks that maintain SQL Server databases. The job configuration is stored in the msdb system database
Alerts	Alerts are actions that are taken when a specific event occurs. They are used to respond to and correct errors that occur in SQL Server. The alert configuration is stored in the msdb system database.
Operators	Operators are contacts that address problems occurring in SQL Server. They are notified in the event of errors. The operator configuration is stored in the msdb system database.
Extended Stored Procedures	Extended stored procedures are external routines that are called from within SQL Server. They are typically stored in DLL files on the file system.
Other Server Extensions	SQL Server is a very flexible database engine and it is possible to extend its functionality in several ways. These extensions are also important to the operation of the SQL Server.

## Running SQL Server in an active-active clustered environment

SQL Server allows multiple independent instances of SQL Server to run on a single machine. Using this feature, the VCS database agent for Microsoft SQL Server supports SQL Server in an active-active environment by allowing a node to run as many instances as supported by SQL. A SQL Server instance can fail over to any of the other configured nodes that are part of the service group's system list.

You can choose an active-active SQL Server configuration where several instances are intended to run on a single node. However, remember that you

must configure the failover nodes such that a single node can never host more instances than what is supported by SQL Server.

Refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation for more information about multiple instance support.

## Typical SQL Server configuration in a VCS cluster

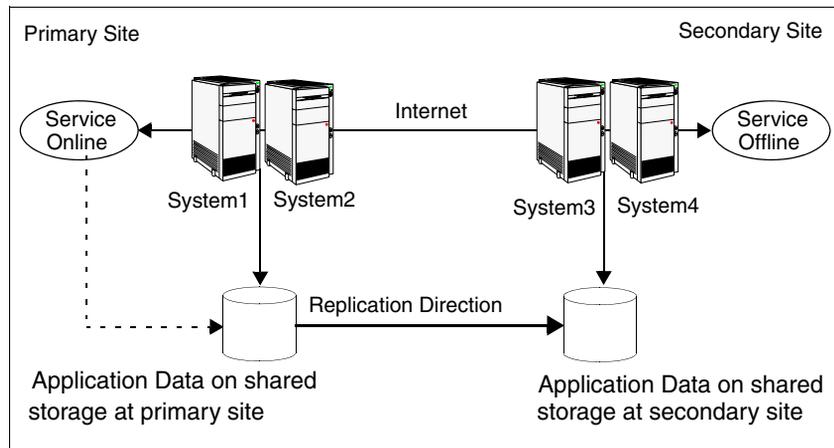
A typical SQL Server configuration in a VCS cluster involves two cluster nodes accessing a shared storage. The SQL Server binaries are installed on the cluster nodes. The shared storage is used to store SQL Server data files and the MSDTC log files. The cluster nodes access the shared storage. The shared storage can be managed using SFW.

## Typical SQL Server disaster recovery configuration

A disaster recovery (DR) configuration enables you to restore application data and services in the event of a catastrophic failure. A typical DR solution requires primary and secondary sites, and clusters within those sites. The cluster at the primary site provides data and services during normal operation, and the cluster at the secondary site provides data and services if the primary site fails.

Figure 1-3 illustrates a typical SQL Server DR configuration.

Figure 1-3 Typical DR configuration in a VCS cluster



The illustration displays an environment with a DR solution that is prepared for a disaster. In this case, the primary site consists of two nodes, System1 and System2. Similarly the secondary setup consists of two nodes, System3 and System4. Each site has a clustered setup with the nodes set up appropriately for failover within the site.

Data is replicated from the primary site to the secondary site. Replication between the storage is set up using a replication software. If the Microsoft SQL Server on System1 fails, SQL Server comes online on node System2 and begins servicing requests. From the user's perspective there might be a small delay as the backup node comes online, but the interruption in effective service is minimal.

When a failure occurs, such as an earthquake that destroys the data center in which the primary site resides, the DR solution is activated. System3 at the secondary site takes over, and the data that was replicated to the secondary site is used to restore the application services to clients.

# Where to get more information about Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server

Table 1-1 shows the available Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions solutions guides for SQL Server 2000/2005. Separate guides are available for SQL Server 2008, for Microsoft Exchange, for Enterprise Vault, and for additional application solutions.

**Table 1-1** SFW HA solutions guides for SQL Server 2000/2005

Title	Description
<i>Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Microsoft Clustering and Quick Recovery Solutions Guide for Microsoft SQL</i>	Quick Recovery solutions for SQL Server 2000 and 2005 using either Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows or Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows.  Solutions for SQL Server 2000/2005 and Microsoft clustering with Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ High availability (HA)</li> <li>■ Campus clusters</li> <li>■ Disaster recovery (DR) with Veritas Volume Replicator</li> </ul>
<i>Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions HA and Disaster Recovery Solutions Guide for Microsoft SQL</i>	Solutions for SQL Server 2000/2005 and Veritas Cluster Server clustering with Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ High availability (HA)</li> <li>■ Campus clusters</li> <li>■ Replicated data clusters</li> <li>■ Disaster recovery (DR) with Veritas Volume Replicator or hardware array replication</li> </ul>



# Configuration Workflows

This section contains the following chapters:

- [Using the Solutions Configuration Center](#)
- [Configuration workflows for SQL Server](#)



# Configuration workflows for SQL Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About using the workflow tables](#)
- [High availability \(HA\) configuration \(New Server\)](#)
- [High availability \(HA\) configuration \(Existing Server\)](#)
- [Tasks for configuring MSDTC for high availability](#)
- [VCS campus cluster configuration](#)
- [VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration](#)
- [Disaster recovery configuration](#)

## About using the workflow tables

Configuring a high availability or a disaster recovery environment involves a series of tasks such as evaluating the requirements, configuring the storage, installing and configuring VCS, installing and configuring the application, and so on. A configuration workflow table provides high level description of all the required tasks, with links to the topics that describe these tasks in detail.

Separate workflow tables are provided for HA, campus cluster, Replicated Data Cluster and DR configurations. Depending on the required high availability configuration, use the appropriate workflow table as a guideline to perform the installation and configuration.

Symantec recommends using the Solutions Configuration Center as a guide for installing and configuring SFW HA for SQL Server.

See [“About the Solutions Configuration Center”](#) on page 55.

The workflow tables are organized to follow the workflows in the Solutions Configuration Center.

For example, in using the Solutions Configuration Center to set up a site for disaster recovery, you first follow the steps under High Availability (HA) Configuration and then continue with the steps under Disaster Recovery Configuration. Likewise, in this guide, you first refer to the High Availability workflow to set up high availability. You then continue with the appropriate workflow, either Replicated Data Cluster, campus cluster, or disaster recovery, for any additional solution that you want to implement.

# High availability (HA) configuration (New Server)

[Table 2-1](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for an Active-Passive or an Active-Active SQL configuration.

**Table 2-1** SQL Server: Active-Passive configuration tasks

Action	Description
Verify hardware and software requirements	See <a href="#">“Reviewing the requirements”</a> on page 72.
Review the HA configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understand active-passive and active-active configuration</li> <li>■ Review the sample configuration</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Reviewing the HA configuration”</a> on page 80.
Configure the storage hardware and network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set up the storage hardware for a cluster environment</li> <li>■ Verify the DNS entries for the systems on which SQL will be installed</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring the storage hardware and network”</a> on page 108.
Install SFW HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify the driver signing option for the system</li> <li>■ Install Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows</li> <li>■ Select the option to install Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for Microsoft SQL Server</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows”</a> on page 110.
Configure disk groups and volumes for SQL Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a dynamic cluster disk group using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA)</li> <li>■ Create dynamic volumes for the SQL system database, user databases, transaction logs, and replicated registry keys for each instance</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server”</a> on page 117.
Configure VCS cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify static IP addresses and name resolution configured for each node</li> <li>■ Run the VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard (VCW) to configure cluster components and set up secure communication for the cluster</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring the cluster”</a> on page 133.

**Table 2-1** SQL Server: Active-Passive configuration tasks (Continued)

Action	Description
Review considerations before installing and configuring multiple instances of SQL Server	<p>If you are installing multiple instances of SQL Server, refer to the following topic.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“About installing multiple SQL instances”</a> on page 152.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes for the system database are mounted on the first node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 153.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 155.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the second or additional failover nodes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second or additional node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Setting the internal name of the clustered instance (SQL Server 2000)	<p>(SQL Server 2000) Set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name\instance name</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000”</a> on page 158.</p>
Create a SQL Server user-defined database	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create volumes, if not created already, for a user-defined database and transaction log</li> <li>■ Create a user-defined database in SQL Server</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating a SQL Server user-defined database”</a> on page 161.</p>

**Table 2-1** SQL Server: Active-Passive configuration tasks (Continued)

Action	Description
Create a SQL service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a SQL Server service group using the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard</li> <li>■ For an active-active SQL configuration, ensure that the priority order of the systems in the service group for each instance is set up in reverse order</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group</a>” on page 164.</p>
Perform additional configuration steps for multiple instances or disaster recovery configuration	See “ <a href="#">Completing configuration steps in SQL Server</a> ” on page 162.
Verify the HA configuration	<p>Test failover between nodes</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration</a>” on page 171.</p>
In case of an active-active configuration, repeat the installation and configuration steps for the next SQL instance, or proceed to the additional steps depending on the desired HA configuration.	See “ <a href="#">Determining additional steps needed</a> ” on page 182.

## High availability (HA) configuration (Existing Server)

You can convert an existing standalone SQL Server into a “clustered” SQL Server in a new Veritas Storage Foundation HA environment. This environment involves an active-passive configuration with one to one failover capabilities.

---

**Note:** Some installation and configuration options are identified as required “for a disaster recovery configuration.” These options apply only if you intend to set up a secondary site for disaster recovery using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR).

---

[Table 2-2](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for converting an existing standalone SQL Server for high availability.

**Table 2-2** SQL Server: Standalone server HA configuration tasks

Action	Description
Verifying hardware and software prerequisites	See “ <a href="#">Reviewing the requirements</a> ” on page 72.
Review the HA configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understand active-passive configuration</li> <li>■ Review the sample configuration</li> </ul> See “ <a href="#">Reviewing a standalone SQL Server configuration</a> ” on page 86.
Configure the storage hardware and network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set up the storage hardware for a cluster environment</li> <li>■ Verify the DNS entries for the systems on which SQL will be installed</li> </ul> See “ <a href="#">Configuring the storage hardware and network</a> ” on page 108.
Install SFW HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify the driver signing option for the system</li> <li>■ Install Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows</li> <li>■ Select the option to install Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for Microsoft SQL Server</li> </ul> See “ <a href="#">Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows</a> ” on page 110.

**Table 2-2** SQL Server: Standalone server HA configuration tasks (Continued)

Action	Description
Configure disk groups and volumes for SQL Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Plan the storage layout</li> <li>■ Create a dynamic cluster disk group using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA)</li> <li>■ For a new shared storage configuration, create dynamic volumes for the SQL system database, user databases and transaction logs using VEA</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server</a>” on page 117.</p>
Configure the VCS cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify static IP addresses and name resolution configured for each node</li> <li>■ Run the VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard (VCW) to configure cluster components and set up secure communication for the cluster</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring the cluster</a>” on page 133.</p>
Move SQL Server database and log files to shared storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Back up existing SQL data</li> <li>■ Set SQL Server services to manual start</li> <li>■ Stop SQL Server service</li> <li>■ Modify data file and user database locations</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Verifying that SQL Server databases and logs are moved to shared storage</a>” on page 152.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the second or additional failover nodes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second or additional node</li> <li>■ Optionally, rename system data files</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node</a>” on page 157.</p>
Setting the internal name of the clustered instance (SQL Server 2000)	<p>(SQL Server 2000) Set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name\instance name</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000</a>” on page 158.</p>

**Table 2-2** SQL Server: Standalone server HA configuration tasks (Continued)

Action	Description
Create a SQL user defined database	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create volumes, if not created already, for a user-defined database and transaction log</li> <li>■ Create a new user-defined database in SQL Server</li> <li>■ Add resources for a user-defined database in VCS</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000</a>” on page 158.</p>
Create a SQL service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a SQL Server service group using the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard</li> <li>■ For an active-active SQL configuration, ensure that the priority order of the systems in the service group for each instance is set up in reverse order</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group</a>” on page 164.</p>
Verify the HA configuration	<p>Test fail over between nodes</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration</a>” on page 171.</p>

# Tasks for configuring MSDTC for high availability

You can configure high availability for MSDTC either before or after configuring high availability for Microsoft SQL Server. The MSDTC agent comprises two parts, MSDTC Server and MSDTC client.

To configure high availability for MSDTC in a SQL Server 2000 or 2005 environment, you first use the SQL Server Configuration Wizard to configure a service group for the MSDTC server and then configure the MSDTC client manually.

---

**Note:** You cannot use the SQL Configuration Wizard to configure the MSDTC clients.

---

[Table 2-3](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for an MSDTC configuration.

**Table 2-3** Tasks for configuring MSDTC for high availability

Action	Description
Verifying hardware and software prerequisites	<a href="#">“Reviewing the requirements”</a> on page 72
Review the MSDTC configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understand MSDTC service group configuration</li> <li>■ Review the sample configuration</li> </ul> <a href="#">“Reviewing the MSDTC configuration”</a> on page 89
Configure disk groups and volumes for MSDTC	Configure cluster disk groups and volumes for an MSDTC server service group See <a href="#">“Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server”</a> on page 117.
Create an MSDTC server service group	Create an MSDTC server service group See <a href="#">“Configuring an MSDTC Server service group”</a> on page 172.
Configure the MSDTC client	Configure the MSDTC client See <a href="#">“About configuring the MSDTC client for SQL Server”</a> on page 177.
Viewing DTC transactions	View DTC transaction lists and statistics See <a href="#">“Viewing DTC transaction information”</a> on page 179.

## VCS campus cluster configuration

You can install and configure a new Veritas Storage Foundation HA environment for SQL Server in a campus cluster configuration. A campus cluster environment provides high availability and disaster recovery that extends beyond local clustering and mirroring at a single site, but is not as complex as SFW HA DR solution with replication.

Symantec recommends using the Solutions Configuration Center as a guide for installing and configuring SFW HA for SQL Server.

See [“About the Solutions Configuration Center”](#) on page 55.

[Table 2-4](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for a campus cluster configuration for SQL.

**Table 2-4** Task list: SQL Server campus cluster configuration

Action	Description
Verify hardware and software prerequisites	<a href="#">“Reviewing the requirements”</a> on page 72
Review the campus cluster configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understand active/passive configuration</li> <li>■ Review the sample configuration</li> </ul> <a href="#">“Reviewing the campus cluster configuration”</a> on page 92
Configure storage hardware and network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set up the network and storage for a cluster environment</li> <li>■ Verify the DNS entries for the systems on which SQL will be installed</li> </ul> <a href="#">“Configuring the storage hardware and network”</a> on page 108
Install SFW HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify the driver signing option for the system</li> <li>■ Install Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows</li> <li>■ Select the option to install Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for Microsoft SQL Server</li> </ul> <a href="#">“Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows”</a> on page 110

**Table 2-4** Task list: SQL Server campus cluster configuration (Continued)

Action	Description
Configure disk groups and volumes for SQL Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a dynamic cluster disk group using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA)</li> <li>■ Create dynamic volumes for the SQL system database, user databases and transaction logs using the VEA</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server”</a> on page 117.</p>
Configure the VCS cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify static IP addresses and name resolution configured for each node</li> <li>■ Run the Veritas Cluster Server Configuration Wizard (VCW) to configure cluster components and set up secure communication for the cluster</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring the cluster”</a> on page 133.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes for the system database are mounted on the first node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 153.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 155.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the second or additional failover nodes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second or additional node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Setting the internal name of the clustered instance (SQL Server 2000)	<p>(SQL Server 2000) Set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name\instance name</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000”</a> on page 158.</p>

**Table 2-4** Task list: SQL Server campus cluster configuration (Continued)

Action	Description
Create a SQL user defined database	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create volumes, if not created already, for a user-defined database and transaction log</li> <li>■ Create a user-defined database in SQL Server</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Creating a SQL Server user-defined database”</a> on page 161.
Create a SQL service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a SQL Server service group using the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group”</a> on page 164.
Modify the Address and SubNetMask attributes if the sites are in different subnets	Modify the Address and SubNetMask attributes if the sites are in different subnets. See <a href="#">“Modifying the IP resource in the SQL Server service group”</a> on page 186.
Set the ForceImport attribute of the VMDg resource as per the requirement	If a site failure occurs, set the ForceImport attribute of the VMDg resource to 1 to ensure proper failover See <a href="#">“Setting the ForceImport attribute to 1 after a site failure”</a> on page 188.

# VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration

You can install and configure a new Veritas Storage Foundation HA environment for SQL Server in a Replicated Data Cluster configuration.

The configuration process for a Replicated Data Cluster configuration has the following three main stages:

- Configure the SFW HA and SQL Server components for high availability on the primary zone nodes.
- Install and configure SFW HA and SQL Server components on the secondary zone.
- Configure the VVR components for both zones.  
Refer to the *Veritas Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide* for additional details on VVR.

[Table 2-5](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for a Replicated Data Cluster configuration for SQL.

**Table 2-5** Process for deploying a Replicated Data Cluster

Action	Description
Verify hardware and software prerequisites	See <a href="#">“Reviewing the requirements”</a> on page 72.
Understand the configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understand active/passive configuration and zone failover in a RDC environment</li> <li>■ Review the sample configuration</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“About a replicated data cluster”</a> on page 22. See <a href="#">“How VCS replicated data clusters work”</a> on page 24. See <a href="#">“Reviewing the Replicated Data Cluster configuration”</a> on page 96. See <a href="#">“About setting up a Replicated Data Cluster configuration”</a> on page 98.
Configure the storage hardware and network	For all nodes in the cluster: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set up the storage hardware for a cluster environment</li> <li>■ Verify the DNS entries for the systems on which SQL will be installed</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring the storage hardware and network”</a> on page 108

**Table 2-5** Process for deploying a Replicated Data Cluster (Continued)

Action	Description
Install SFW HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify the driver signing option for the system</li> <li>■ Install Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows HA on all nodes that will become part of the cluster</li> <li>■ During installation select the option to install VVR; this will also automatically install the Veritas Cluster Server Agent for VVR</li> <li>■ If you plan to configure a disaster recovery site in addition to configuring RDC, install the Global Cluster Option (GCO)</li> <li>■ Selecting the option to install Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for Microsoft SQL Server</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows</a>” on page 110.</p>
Configure the cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify static IP addresses and name resolution configured for each node</li> <li>■ Configure cluster components using the Veritas Cluster Server Configuration Wizard</li> <li>■ Set up secure communication for the cluster</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring the cluster</a>” on page 133.</p>
Configure cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create dynamic cluster disk groups using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA)</li> <li>■ Create dynamic volumes for the SQL system database, registry replication, user databases and transaction logs using the VEA</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server</a>” on page 117.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes for the system database are mounted on the first node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node</a>” on page 153.</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node</a>” on page 155.</p>

**Table 2-5** Process for deploying a Replicated Data Cluster (Continued)

Action	Description
Install and configure SQL Server on the failover node(s) of the primary zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Setting the internal name of the clustered instance (SQL Server 2000)	<p>(SQL Server 2000) Set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name\instance name</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000”</a> on page 158.</p>
Create a SQL Server user-defined database	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If not done earlier, create volumes for a user-defined database and transaction log</li> <li>■ Create a new user-defined database in SQL Server</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating a SQL Server user-defined database”</a> on page 161.</p>
Create a SQL Server service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that you have met the prerequisites</li> <li>■ Create a SQL Server service group using the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group”</a> on page 164.</p>
Create the primary system zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create the primary system zone</li> <li>■ Add the nodes to the primary zone</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating the primary system zone”</a> on page 192.</p>
Verify failover within the primary zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ See <a href="#">“Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration”</a> on page 171.</li> </ul>
Create a parallel environment in the secondary zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Install SFW HA on the systems in the secondary zone</li> <li>■ Configure disk groups and volumes using the same names as on the primary zone</li> <li>■ Install SQL Server following the prerequisites and guidelines for installing on the second zone.</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating a parallel environment in the secondary zone”</a> on page 193.</p>

**Table 2-5** Process for deploying a Replicated Data Cluster (Continued)

Action	Description
Add the secondary zone systems to the cluster	Add the secondary zone systems to the cluster. See <a href="#">“Adding the systems in the secondary zone to the cluster”</a> on page 194.
Set up security for VVR on all cluster nodes	Set up security for VVR on all nodes in both zones. This step can be done at any time after installing SFW HA on all cluster nodes, but must be done before configuring VVR replication. See <a href="#">“Setting up security for VVR”</a> on page 200.
Set up the Replicated Data Set	Use the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard to create RDS and start replication for the primary and secondary zones See <a href="#">“Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS)”</a> on page 203.
Configure a hybrid RVG service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a hybrid Replicated Volume Group (RVG) service group</li> <li>■ Configure the hybrid RVG service group</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring a hybrid RVG service group for replication”</a> on page 215.
Set a dependency between the service groups	Set up a dependency from the VVR RVG service group to the SQL Server service group See <a href="#">“Setting a dependency between the service groups”</a> on page 230.
Add the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Add the nodes from the secondary zone to the RVG service group</li> <li>■ Configure the IP resources for failover</li> <li>■ Add the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server service group</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC”</a> on page 231.
Verify the RDC configuration	Verify that failover occurs first within zones and then from the primary to the secondary zone See <a href="#">“Verifying the RDC configuration”</a> on page 237.

# Disaster recovery configuration

You begin by configuring the primary site for high availability. After setting up an SFW HA high availability environment for SQL on a primary site, you can create a secondary or “failover” site for disaster recovery.

The Disaster Recovery (DR) wizard helps you to clone the storage and service group configuration from the primary site to the secondary site. You can install the application on the secondary site during the DR wizard workflow.

The DR wizard also helps you set up replication and the global clustering (GCO option). You can choose to configure replication using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) or an agent-supported array-based hardware replication. The DR wizard can configure required options for the VCS agents for EMC SRDF and for Hitachi TrueCopy. To use the wizard with any other agent-supported array-based replication, you must complete configuring global clustering with the wizard before configuring replication on the array.

The DR wizard is available from the Solutions Configuration Center. Symantec recommends using the Solutions Configuration Center as a guide for installing and configuring disaster recovery.

See “[About the Solutions Configuration Center](#)” on page 55.

To follow the workflow in the Solutions Configuration Center, the disaster recovery workflow has been split into two tables, one covering the steps for configuring high availability at the primary site, and the other covering the steps for completing the disaster recovery configuration at the secondary site.

## DR configuration tasks: Primary site

[Table 2-6](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for a DR configuration at the primary site.

**Table 2-6** Configuring the primary site for disaster recovery

Action	Description
Verify hardware and software prerequisites	See “ <a href="#">Reviewing the requirements</a> ” on page 72.  <b>Note:</b> If the DR site is on a different network segment, ensure that you allocate two IP addresses for the virtual server, one for the primary site and one for the DR site.
Understand the configuration	Understand the DR configuration  See “ <a href="#">Reviewing the disaster recovery configuration</a> ” on page 100.

**Table 2-6** Configuring the primary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Configure the storage hardware and network	<p>For all nodes in the cluster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set up the storage hardware for a cluster environment</li> <li>■ Verify the DNS entries for the systems on which SQL will be installed</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring the storage hardware and network</a>” on page 108.</p>
Install SFW HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify the driver signing option for the system</li> <li>■ Install Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows HA on all nodes that will become part of the cluster</li> <li>■ Select the option to install the Global Cluster Option (GCO).</li> <li>■ Select the option to install the appropriate replication agents for your configuration.</li> <li>■ Select the option to install Veritas Cluster Server Agent for Microsoft SQL Server</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows</a>” on page 110.</p>
Configure the cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify static IP addresses and name resolution configured for each node</li> <li>■ Configure cluster components using the Veritas Cluster Server Configuration Wizard</li> <li>■ Set up secure communication for the cluster</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring the cluster</a>” on page 133.</p>
Configure cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create dynamic cluster disk groups using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA)</li> <li>■ Create dynamic volumes for the SQL system database, user databases and transaction logs using the VEA</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server</a>” on page 117.</p>

**Table 2-6** Configuring the primary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes for the system database are mounted on the first node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 153.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 155.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the failover node(s)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Setting the internal name of the clustered instance (SQL Server 2000)	<p>(SQL Server 2000) Set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name\instance name</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000”</a> on page 158.</p>
Create a SQL Server user-defined database	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If not done earlier, create volumes for a user-defined database and transaction log</li> <li>■ Create a new user-defined database in SQL Server</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating a SQL Server user-defined database”</a> on page 161.</p>
Create a SQL Server service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that you have met the prerequisites</li> <li>■ Create a SQL Server service group using the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group”</a> on page 164.</p>
Verify the primary site configuration	<p>Test failover between nodes on the primary site.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration”</a> on page 171.</p>

## DR configuration tasks: Secondary site

[Table 2-7](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective for a DR configuration at the secondary site.

**Table 2-7** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery

Action	Description
Install SFW HA and configure the cluster on the secondary site	<p><b>Caution:</b> Ensure that the name you assign to the secondary site cluster is different from the name assigned to the primary site cluster.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Guidelines for installing SFW HA and configuring the cluster on the secondary site”</a> on page 246.</p>
Verify that SQL Server has been configured for high availability at the primary site	<p>Verify that SQL has been configured for high availability at the primary site and that the service groups are online</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Verifying your primary site configuration”</a> on page 247.</p>
Set up the replication prerequisites	<p>Ensure that replication prerequisites for your selected method of replication are met before running the DR wizard</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting up security for VVR”</a> on page 248.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication”</a> on page 251.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring Hitachi TrueCopy replication and global clustering”</a> on page 283.</p>
(Secure cluster only) Assign user privileges	<p>For a secure cluster only, assign user privileges</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Assigning user privileges (secure clusters only)”</a> on page 255.</p>
Start running the DR wizard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Review prerequisites for the DR wizard</li> <li>■ Start the DR wizard and make the initial selections required for each task: selecting a primary site system, the service group, the secondary site system, and the replication method</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard”</a> on page 256.</p>

**Table 2-7** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Clone the storage configuration (VVR replication only)	<p>(VVR replication option)</p> <p>Clone the storage configuration on the secondary site using the DR wizard</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (VVR replication option)”</a> on page 260.</p>
Create temporary storage for application installation (other replication methods)	<p>(EMC SRDF, Hitachi TrueCopy, or GCO only replication option)</p> <p>Use the DR wizard to create temporary storage for installation on the secondary site</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (array-based replication)”</a> on page 264.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes for the system database are mounted on the first node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 153.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 155.</p>
Install and configure SQL Server on the failover node(s)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Clone the service group configuration	<p>Clone the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site using the DR wizard</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Cloning the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site”</a> on page 268.</p>

**Table 2-7** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Configure replication and global clustering, or configure global clustering only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ (VVR replication) Use the wizard to configure replication and global clustering</li> <li>■ (EMC SRDF replication) Set up replication and then use the wizard to configure the SRDF resource and global clustering</li> <li>■ (Hitachi TrueCopy) Set up replication and then use the wizard to configure the HTC resource and global clustering</li> <li>■ (Other array-based replication) Use the wizard to configure global clustering, and then set up replication</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring replication and global clustering</a>” on page 272.</p>
Verify the disaster recover configuration	<p>Verify that the secondary site has been fully configured for disaster recovery</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Verifying the disaster recovery configuration</a>” on page 288.</p>
(Optional) Add secure communication	<p>Add secure communication between local clusters within the global cluster (optional task)</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Establishing secure communication within the global cluster (optional)</a>” on page 290.</p>
(Optional) Add additional DR sites	<p>Optionally, add additional DR sites to a VVR environment</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Adding multiple DR sites (optional)</a>” on page 292.</p>
Handling service group dependencies after failover	<p>If your environment includes dependent service groups, review the considerations for bringing the service groups online after failover to the secondary site</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Recovery procedures for service group dependencies</a>” on page 293.</p>

# Using the Solutions Configuration Center

This chapter covers the following topics:

- [About the Solutions Configuration Center](#)
- [Starting the Configuration Center](#)
- [Available options from the Configuration Center](#)
- [About running the Configuration Center wizards](#)
- [Following the workflow in the Configuration Center](#)
- [Solutions wizard logs](#)

## About the Solutions Configuration Center

The Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Configuration Center guides you through setting up your Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows (SFW) or SFW High Availability (HA) environment. The Configuration Center provides solutions for the following applications:

- Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 and 2007
- Microsoft SQL Server 2000, 2005, and 2008
- Enterprise Vault Server (high availability new server and disaster recovery solutions)
- Additional applications

You can use the Configuration Center and its wizards to set up your environment for any combination of the following solutions:

- High availability at a single site for a new installation
- High availability at a single site for an existing server

- Campus cluster disaster recovery, including the following:
  - Campus cluster using Veritas Cluster Server (SFW HA)
  - Campus cluster using Microsoft clustering
- Wide area disaster recovery involving multiple sites
- Quick Recovery for on-host recovery from logical errors in application data (available for Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 and for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and 2008)
- Fire drill to test the fault readiness of a disaster recovery environment

The Solutions Configuration Center provides two ways to access Solutions wizards:

- The Applications tab lists solutions by application. It provides step-by-step configuration instructions that include buttons to launch the appropriate wizard for each step.
- The Solutions tab, for advanced users, lists wizards by solution without additional instructions.

## Starting the Configuration Center

You can start the Configuration Center in the following ways:

- Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Solutions Configuration Center**.
- Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**.
- Click **Start > Run** and type **scc**.

# Available options from the Configuration Center

On the Applications tab, the Solutions Configuration Center is context-sensitive to the application. For example, the Solution Guides listed in the right pane match the selected application.

In addition, some choices can vary depending on the operating system of the node on which you launch the wizard. For example, since Microsoft Exchange 2003 runs only on 32-bit operating systems, on a 64-bit system only the Exchange 2007 configuration wizard is shown.

Figure 3-1 shows the choices available on a 32-bit system when you click Solutions for Microsoft Exchange.

**Figure 3-1** Solutions Configuration Center for Microsoft Exchange

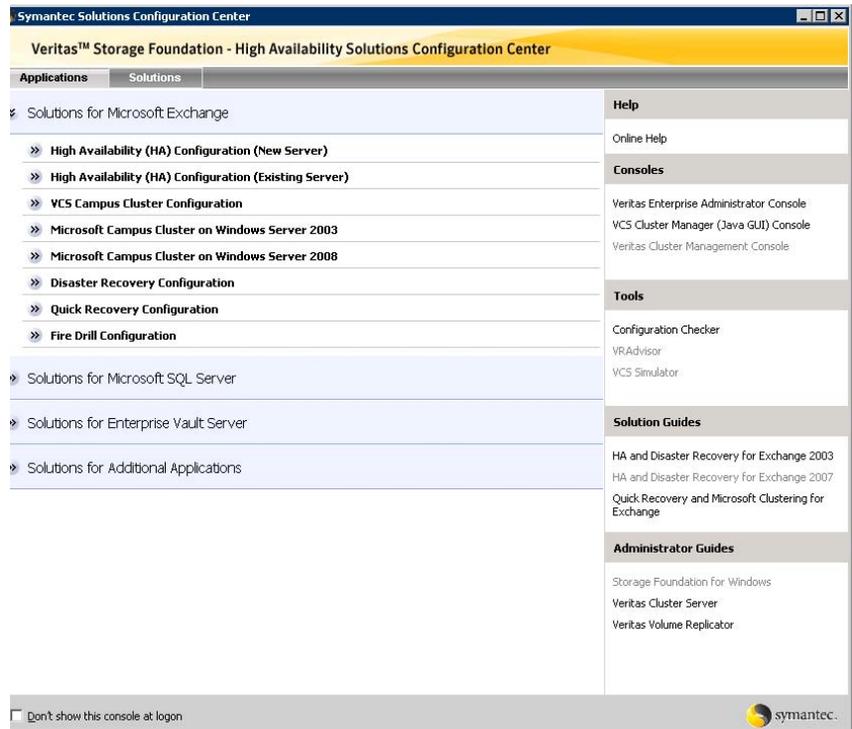


Figure 3-2 shows the choices available when you click Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server.

Figure 3-2 Solutions Configuration Center for Microsoft SQL Server

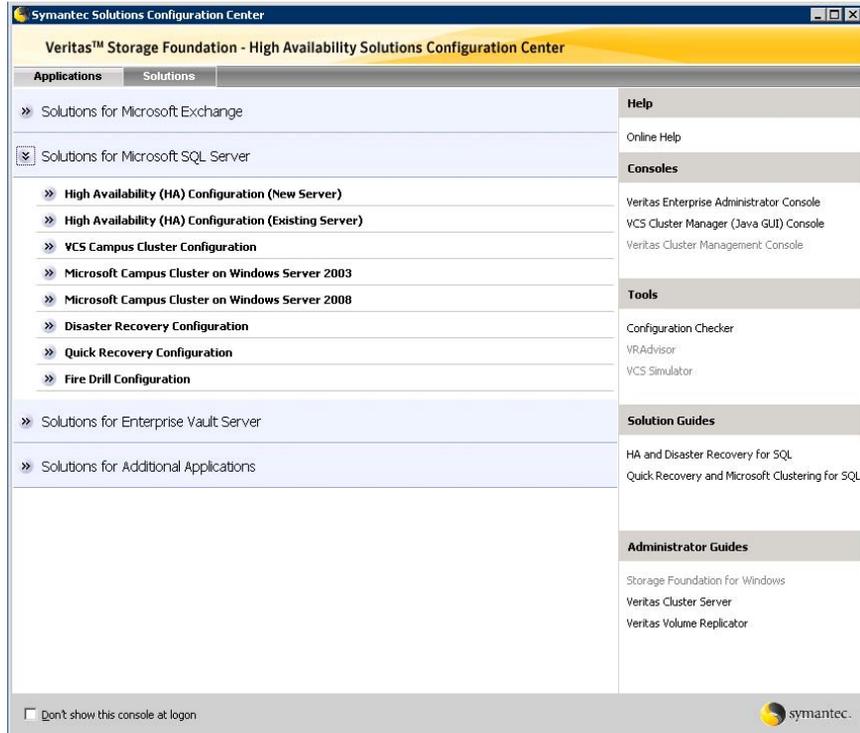


Figure 3-3 shows the choices available when you click Solutions for Enterprise Vault Server.

Figure 3-3 Solutions Configuration Center for Enterprise Vault Server

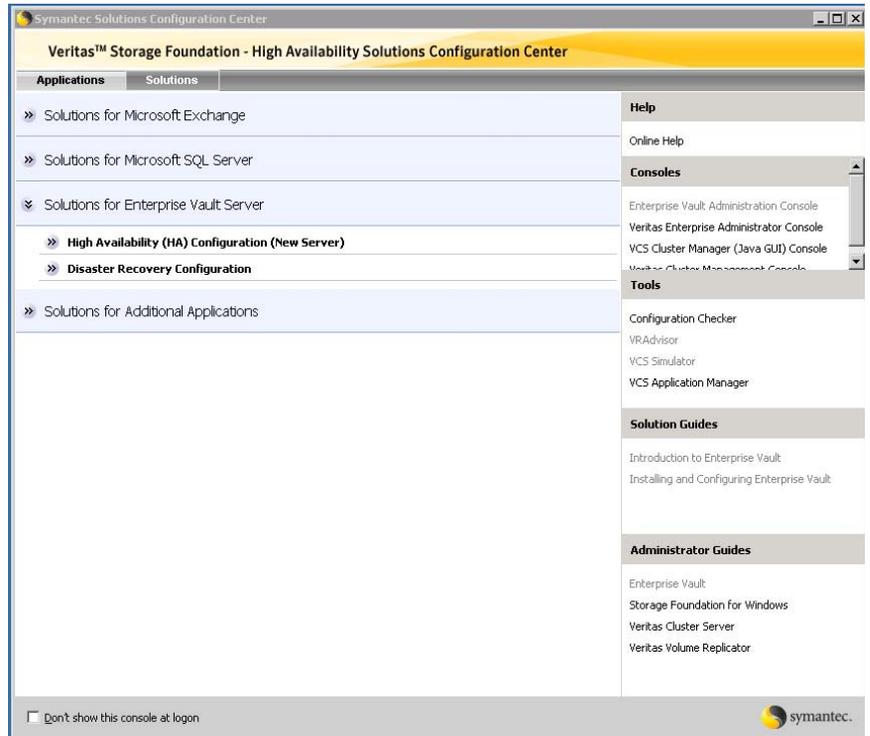
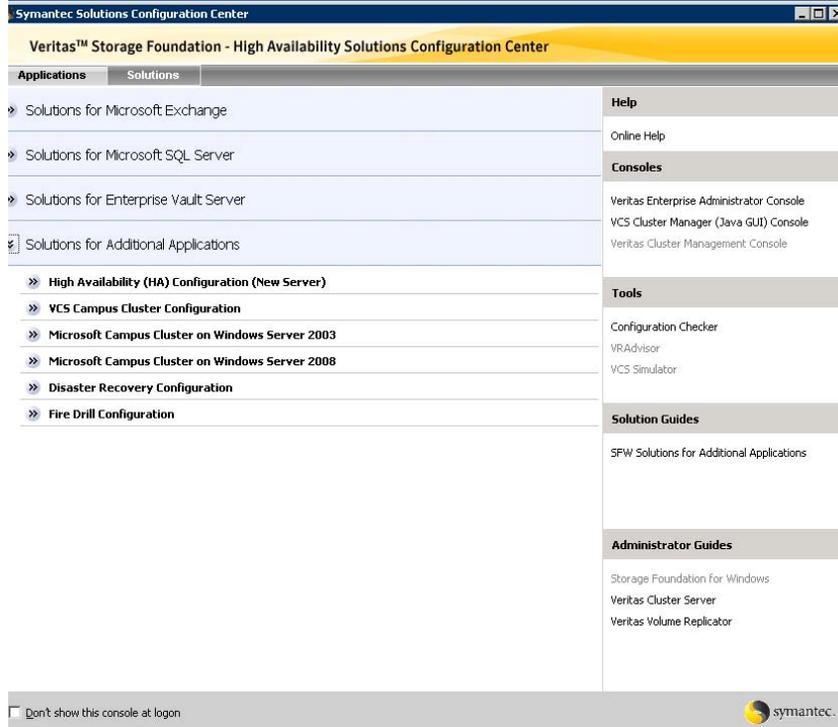


Figure 3-4 shows the choices available when you click Solutions for Additional Applications.

Figure 3-4 Solutions Configuration Center for additional applications



The submenu choices also vary by application. For example, different steps, information, or wizards are shown under High Availability (HA) Configuration for Exchange than those shown for SQL Server.

Figure 3-5 shows one of the steps for implementing high availability for Exchange.

Figure 3-5 Context-sensitive step for Exchange



Figure 3-6 shows one of the steps for implementing high availability for SQL Server.

Figure 3-6 Context-sensitive step for SQL Server

**4 Configure the SQL Server service group**

The SQL Server Configuration Wizard helps you create a SQL Server service group to make the SQL Server instance highly available.

[Read how to create a new SQL Server service group](#)

Run this wizard to create a new SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server 2005 service group.

 Wizard must be run locally

SQL Server Configuration Wizard

Run this wizard to create a new SQL Server 2008 service group.

 Wizard must be run locally

SQL Server 2008 Configuration Wizard

Figure 3-7 shows one of the steps for implementing high availability for Enterprise Vault Server.

Figure 3-7 Context-sensitive step for Enterprise Vault Server

**4 Configure the Enterprise Vault service group**

The Enterprise Vault Cluster Setup Wizard helps you create a service group to make the Enterprise Vault instance highly available.

**Note:** The wizard, by default, stores the Indexing and Shopping services data at the same location as that of the MSMQ data. You can modify this location after configuring the Enterprise Vault Server.

[Read how to create the Enterprise Vault service group](#)

 Wizard must be run locally

Enterprise Vault Cluster Setup Wizard

Figure 3-8 shows one of the steps for implementing high availability for additional applications.

**Figure 3-8** Context-sensitive step for additional applications

**4 Configure the service group**

Create a service group to make your application or server role highly available.

[Read how to create a File Share service group](#)

Wizard must be run locally

File Share Configuration Wizard

[Read how to create a Print Share service group](#)

Wizard must be run locally

Print Share Configuration Wizard

[Read how to create an IIS Server service group](#)

Wizard must be run locally

IIS Configuration Wizard

[Read how to create a Microsoft Virtual Server virtual machine service group](#)

Wizard must be run locally

MSVirtual Machine Configuration Wizard

[Read how to create an Oracle service group](#)

Wizard must be run locally

Oracle Agent Configuration Wizard

[Read how to create a service group for an application, process or service](#)

Wizard must be run locally

Application Configuration Wizard

## About running the Configuration Center wizards

You can run the wizards from the Applications tab if you are walking through the configuration steps on the Solutions Configuration Center. If you are already familiar with configuration, you can also go directly to a particular wizard by selecting the Solutions tab.

The Configuration Center and some wizards can be run from a remote system. Wizards that you can run remotely include the following:

VCS Configuration Wizard	Sets up the VCS cluster
Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard	Configures wide area disaster recovery, including cloning storage, cloning service groups, and configuring the global cluster  Also can configure Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) replication or configure the VCS resource for EMC SRDF and Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication.  Requires first configuring high availability on the primary site
Quick Recovery Configuration Wizard	Schedules preparation of snapshot mirrors and schedules the Quick Recovery snapshots
Fire Drill Wizard	Sets up a fire drill to test disaster recovery  Requires configuring disaster recovery first

Wizards related to storage configuration and application installation must be run locally on the system where the process is occurring. Wizards that you must run locally include the following:

New Dynamic Disk Group Wizard	Launched from the Veritas Enterprise Administrator console
New Volume Wizard	Launched from the Veritas Enterprise Administrator console
Exchange Setup Wizard	Installs and configures Exchange for the high availability environment  If Exchange is already installed, refer to the documentation for further instructions.
Exchange Configuration Wizard	Configures the service group for Exchange high availability

SQL Server Configuration Wizard	Configures the service group for SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server 2005 high availability  You must first install SQL Server on each node according to the instructions in the documentation.
SQL Server 2008 Configuration Wizard	Configures the service group for SQL Server 2008 high availability  You must first install SQL Server on each node according to the instructions in the documentation.
Enterprise Vault Cluster Setup Wizard	Configures the service group for Enterprise Vault Server high availability.
MSDTC Wizard	Configures an MSDTC Server service group for SQL Server 2000, 2005, or 2008 environments.
MSMQ Configuration Wizard	Configures a Microsoft Message Queuing (MSMQ) service group.

The Additional Applications section of the Configuration Center provides wizards to be run locally for creating service groups for the following applications or server roles:

File Share Configuration Wizard	Configures FileShare for high availability.
Print Share Configuration Wizard	Configures PrintShare for high availability.
IIS Configuration Wizard	Configures IIS for high availability.
MSVirtual Machine Configuration Wizard	Configures MS Virtual Machine for high availability.
Oracle Agent Configuration Wizard	Configures Oracle for high availability
Application Configuration Wizard	Configures any other application service group for which application-specific wizards have not been provided.

## Following the workflow in the Configuration Center

During the multi-step High Availability Configuration workflow, you may find it helpful to run an SFW HA client on another system and leave the Configuration Center open on that system. In this way, you can see what step comes next, drill

down to the information about that step, and access the online help if needed. You can also print the online help topics and the documentation in PDF format. When setting up a site for disaster recovery, you first follow the steps under High Availability (HA) Configuration and then continue with the steps under Disaster Recovery Configuration.

Figure 3-9 shows the high-level overview of the workflow steps for configuring high availability for Exchange from the Solutions Configuration Center.

**Figure 3-9** Workflow for configuring Exchange high availability

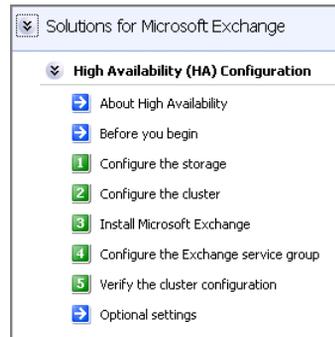


Figure 3-10 shows the high-level overview of the workflow steps for configuring high availability for SQL Server from the Solutions Configuration Center.

**Figure 3-10** Workflow for configuring SQL Server high availability

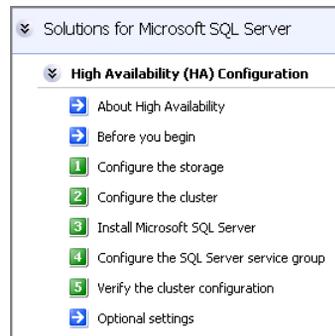


Figure 3-11 shows the high-level overview of the workflow steps for configuring high availability for Enterprise Vault Server from the Solutions Configuration Center.

**Figure 3-11** Workflow for configuring high availability for Enterprise Vault Server

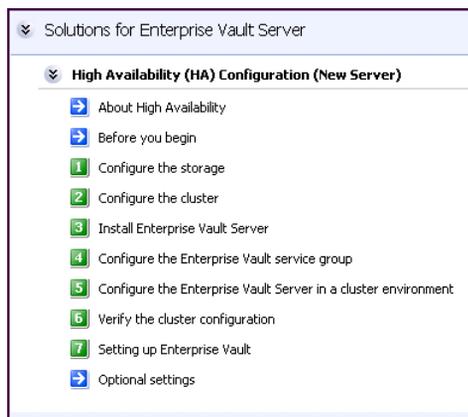
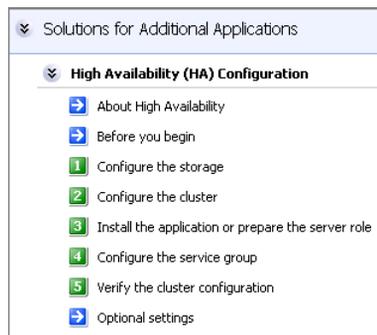


Figure 3-12 shows the high-level overview of the workflow steps for configuring high availability for additional applications from the Solutions Configuration Center.

**Figure 3-12** Workflow for configuring high availability for additional applications



## Solutions wizard logs

The Solutions Configuration Center provides access to many wizards. However, three wizards are built in to the Solutions Configuration Center:

- Disaster Recovery Wizard
- Fire Drill Wizard
- Quick Recovery Configuration Wizard

These three Solutions wizards are launched only from the Solutions Configuration Center, whereas other wizards can be launched from product consoles or the Start menu.

Logs created by these three Solutions wizards are located in the following paths:

For Windows Server 2003:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application  
Data\VERITAS\winsolutions\log
```

For Windows Server 2008:

```
C:\ProgramData\Veritas\winsolutions\log
```



# Requirements and Planning

This section contains the following chapter:

- [Requirements and planning for your HA and DR configurations](#)



# Requirements and planning for your HA and DR configurations

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Reviewing the requirements](#)
- [Reviewing the prerequisites for a standalone SQL Server](#)
- [Reviewing the HA configuration](#)
- [Following the HA workflow in the Solutions Configuration Center](#)
- [Reviewing a standalone SQL Server configuration](#)
- [Reviewing the MSDTC configuration](#)
- [Reviewing the campus cluster configuration](#)
- [Reviewing the Replicated Data Cluster configuration](#)
- [About setting up a Replicated Data Cluster configuration](#)
- [Reviewing the disaster recovery configuration](#)

## Reviewing the requirements

Verify that the requirements for your configuration are met before starting the Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows installation.

### Disk space requirements

For normal operation, all installations require an additional 50 MB of disk space. [Table 4-1](#) estimates disk space requirements for SFW HA.

**Table 4-1** Disk space requirements

Installation options	Install directory/drive
SFW HA + all options + client components	1564 MB
SFW HA + all options	1197 MB
Client components	528 MB

### Requirements for Veritas Storage Foundation High Availability for Windows (SFW HA)

Before installing Veritas Storage Foundation High Availability for Windows (SFW HA), ensure that you review the following:

- Review the general installation requirements for SFW HA in the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Windows Installation and Upgrade Guide*.
- Review the SFW 5.1 Service Pack 1 Hardware Compatibility List to confirm supported hardware:  
<http://entsupport.symantec.com/docs/302144>
- Review the SQL Server environments supported with Veritas Storage Foundation High Availability for Windows (SFW HA).
- When installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows (SFW HA) for Microsoft SQL Server 2000 or 2005 solutions, ensure that you select the option to install the Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for Microsoft SQL.

Microsoft SQL Server 2000 and Microsoft SQL Server 2005 can exist in the same cluster and operate on or fail over to the same systems. However, only one "default" instance can exist on a system at one time. Additional instances that operate on or fail over to that system must be named

instances. The number of named instances is limited only by the normal limit of instances for that version of SQL Server.

- When installing SFW HA for a Disaster Recovery configuration, ensure that you select the Global Clustering Option and depending on your replication solution select Veritas Volume Replicator or a hardware replication agent.
- When installing SFW HA for a Replicated Data Cluster configuration, ensure that you select the option to install Veritas Volume Replicator.

## Supported SQL Server 2000 versions

The following table lists the SQL Server 2000 versions supported with SFW HA 5.1 Service Pack 1.

**Table 4-2** Supported Microsoft SQL Server 2000 versions

SQL Server 2000	Windows Servers
Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition (SP4 required)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required for all editions)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 R2 (32-bit) Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required for all editions)</li> </ul>
Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (64-bit) Enterprise Edition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 for Itanium-based Systems Enterprise Edition or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required for both)</li> </ul>
Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (64-bit) Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition (SP4 required)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions (for AMD64 or Intel EM64T): Standard x64 Edition, Enterprise x64 Edition, or Datacenter x64 Edition (SP2 required for all editions)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions (for AMD64 or Intel EM64T): Standard x64 R2 Edition, Enterprise x64 R2 Edition, or Datacenter x64 R2 Edition (SP2 required for all editions)</li> </ul>

## Supported SQL Server 2005 versions

The following table lists the Microsoft SQL Server 2005 versions supported with SFW HA 5.1 Service Pack 1.

**Table 4-3** Microsoft SQL Server 2005 supported environments

Microsoft SQL Server 2005	Window Servers
Microsoft SQL Server 2005, 32-bit Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition on Windows Server 2003 (SQL Server 2005 SP1, SP2, or SP3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 R2 (32-bit) Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 for Itanium-based Systems Enterprise Edition or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required for both)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 Standard x64 Edition, Enterprise x64 Edition, or Datacenter x64 Edition (SP2 required)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions (for AMD64 or Intel EM64T): Standard x64 R2 Edition, Enterprise x64 R2 Edition, or Datacenter x64 R2 Edition (SP2 required)</li> </ul>
Microsoft SQL Server 2005, 32-bit Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition on Windows Server 2008 (SQL Server 2005 SP2 or SP3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 (32-bit) Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 R2 without Hyper-V on Standard, Enterprise, Datacenter Editions</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 R2 on Standard, Enterprise, Datacenter Editions (for physical host or guest, not parent partition/Hyper-V integration)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 R2 for IA Systems - IA64</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 R2 Web Edition</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 on all current editions and architectures Symantec currently supports (SP2 required)</li> <li>■ Windows Storage Server 2008</li> </ul>

**Table 4-3** Microsoft SQL Server 2005 supported environments

Microsoft SQL Server 2005	Window Servers
<p>Microsoft SQL Server 2005, 64-bit Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition on Windows Server 2003 (SQL Server 2005 SP1, SP2, or SP3)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 for Itanium-based Systems Enterprise Edition or Datacenter Edition (SP2 required for both)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 Standard x64 Edition, Enterprise x64 Edition, or Datacenter x64 Edition (SP2 required)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions (for AMD64 or Intel EM64T): Standard x64 R2 Edition, Enterprise x64 R2 Edition, or Datacenter x64 R2 Edition (SP2 required)</li> </ul>
<p>Microsoft SQL Server 2005, 64-bit Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition on Windows Server 2008 (SQL Server 2005 SP1, SP2, or SP3)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 for 64-bit Itanium (IA64)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions (for AMD64 or Intel EM64T): Standard x64 Edition, Enterprise x64 Edition, or Datacenter x64 Edition</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 R2 without Hyper-V on Standard, Enterprise, Datacenter Editions</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 R2 on Standard, Enterprise, Datacenter Editions (for physical host or guest, not parent partition/Hyper-V integration)</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 R2 for IA Systems - IA64</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 x64 R2 Web Edition</li> <li>■ Windows Server 2008 on all current editions and architectures Symantec currently supports (SP2 required)</li> <li>■ Windows Storage Server 2008</li> </ul>

## System requirements for SFW HA

Systems must meet the following requirements for SFW HA:

- Memory must be a minimum 1 GB of RAM per server for SFW HA.
- Memory must be a minimum 1 GB of RAM per server for SQL Server; refer to the Microsoft documentation for more information.
- Shared disks to support applications that migrate between nodes in the cluster. Campus clusters require more than one array for mirroring. Disaster recovery configurations require one array for each site. Replicated data clusters with no shared storage are also supported.  
If your storage devices are SCSI-3 compliant, and you wish to use SCSI-3 Persistent Group Reservations (PGR), you must enable SCSI-3 support using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA). See the *Veritas Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide* for more information.
- SCSI, Fibre Channel, iSCSI host bus adapters (HBAs), or iSCSI Initiator supported NICs to access shared storage.
- A minimum of two NICs is required. One NIC will be used exclusively for private network communication between the nodes of the cluster. The second NIC will be used for both private cluster communications and for public access to the cluster. Symantec recommends three NICs.  
See "[Best practices for SFW HA](#)" on page 78.
- NIC teaming is not supported for the private network.
- All servers must have the same system architecture, run the same operating system, and be at the same service pack (SP) level.

## Network requirements for SFW HA

SFW HA has the following network requirements:

- Install SFW HA on servers in a Windows Server 2003 or Windows Server 2008 domain.
- Do not install SFW HA on servers that are assigned the role of a Domain Controller. Configuring a cluster on a domain controller is not supported.
- Ensure that your firewall settings allow access to ports used by SFW HA wizards and services. For a detailed list of services and ports used by SFW HA, refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Windows Installation and Upgrade Guide*.
- Static IP addresses for the following purposes:
  - One static IP address available per site for each SQL Virtual Server.

- A minimum of one static IP address for each physical node in the cluster.
- One static IP address per cluster used when configuring Notification, the Cluster Management Console (web console), or the Global Cluster Option. The same IP address may be used for all options.
- For VVR replication in a disaster recovery configuration, a minimum of one static IP address per site for each application instance running in the cluster.
- For VVR replication in a Replicated Data Cluster configuration, a minimum of one static IP address per zone for each application instance running in the cluster.
- Configure name resolution for each node.
- Verify the availability of DNS Services. AD-integrated DNS or BIND 8.2 or higher are supported.  
Make sure a reverse lookup zone exists in the DNS. Refer to the application documentation for instructions on creating a reverse lookup zone.
- DNS scavenging affects virtual servers configured in VCS because the Lanman agent uses Dynamic DNS (DDNS) to map virtual names with IP addresses. If you use scavenging, then you must set the `DNSRefreshInterval` attribute for the Lanman agent. This enables the Lanman agent to refresh the resource records on the DNS servers.  
See the *Veritas Cluster Server Bundled Agents Reference Guide*.

## Permission requirements for SFW HA

The following permissions are required:

- You must be a domain user.
- You must be a member of the local Administrators group on all nodes where you are installing.
- You must have write permissions for the Active Directory objects corresponding to all the nodes.
- If you plan to create a new user account for the VCS Helper service, you must have Domain Administrator privileges or belong to the Account Operators group. If you plan to use an existing user account context for the VCS Helper service, you must know the password for the user account.

## Additional requirements for SFW HA

Please review the following additional requirements:

- Installation media for all products and third-party applications.
- Licenses for all products and third-party applications.
- You must install the operating system in the same path on all systems. For example, if you install Windows Server 2003 on C:\WINDOWS of one node, installations on all other nodes must be on C:\WINDOWS. Make sure that the same drive letter is available on all nodes and that the system drive has adequate space for the installation.
- Before you begin installing SQL Server 2005, verify that Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) is installed and enabled on the system.
- If you plan to create a new user account for the VCS Helper service, you must have Domain Administrator privileges or belong to the Account Operators group. If you plan to use an existing user account context for the VCS Helper service, you must know the password for the user account.

## Best practices for SFW HA

Symantec recommends that you perform the following tasks:

- Configure Microsoft Exchange Server and Microsoft SQL Server on separate failover nodes within a cluster.
- Verify that you have three network adapters (two NICs exclusively for the private network and one for the public network).  
When using only two NICs, lower the priority of one NIC and use the low-priority NIC for public and private communication.
- Route each private NIC through a separate hub or switch to avoid single points of failure.
- NIC teaming is not supported for the private network.
- Verify that you have set the Dynamic Update option for the DNS server to Secure Only.
- Although you can use a single node cluster as the primary and secondary zones, you must create the disk groups as clustered disk groups. If you cannot create a clustered disk group due to the unavailability of disks on a shared bus, use the vxclus UseSystemBus ON command. This is applicable for a Replicated Data Cluster configuration.

# Reviewing the prerequisites for a standalone SQL Server

This is applicable if you are configuring an existing standalone SQL Server for high availability.

Review the following requirements before you begin the process of installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows and creating a clustered environment:

- Create a backup of the data on the existing standalone SQL Server.
- For SQL Server 2005, set all SQL Server 2005 services to manual start, except for the SQL Browser service. Ensure that the SQL Browser service is set to automatic.  
Refer to the SQL Server documentation for instructions.
- For SQL Server 2000, set all SQL Server 2000 services to manual start.  
Refer to the SQL Server documentation for instructions.

## Reviewing the HA configuration

Review the information for the configurations you have planned as follows:

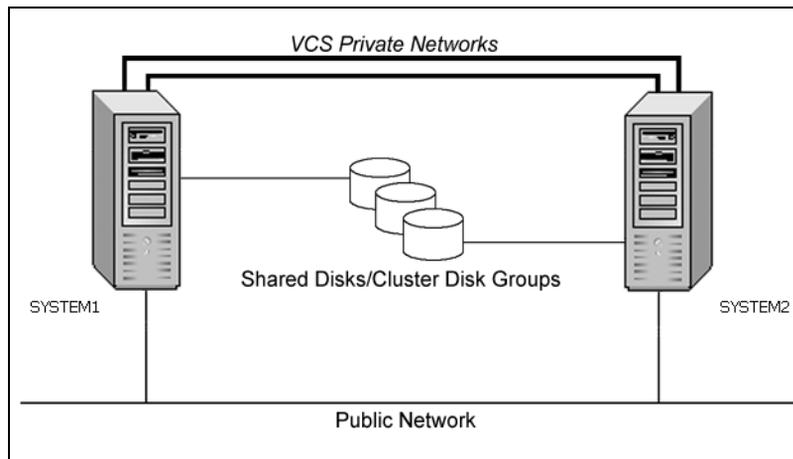
- [Active-Passive configuration](#)
- [Active-Active configuration](#)

### Active-Passive configuration

In a typical example of a high availability cluster, you create a virtual SQL server in an Active-Passive configuration. The active node of the cluster hosts the virtual server. The second node is a dedicated redundant server able to take over and host the virtual server in the event of a failure on the active node.

[Figure 4-1](#) illustrates a typical Active-Passive configuration.

**Figure 4-1** Active-Passive configuration



SQL Server is installed on both SYSTEM1 and SYSTEM2 and configured as a virtual server (INST1-VS) with a virtual IP address. The SQL databases are configured on the shared storage on volumes contained in cluster disk groups. The SQL virtual server is configured to come online on SYSTEM1 first. If SYSTEM1 fails, SYSTEM2 becomes the active node and the SQL virtual server comes online on SYSTEM2.

The virtual SQL Server is online on SYSTEM1, serving client requests. The shared disks provide storage for the SQL Server databases. SYSTEM2 waits in a warm standby state as a backup node, prepared to begin handling client requests if SYSTEM1 becomes unavailable. From the user's perspective there

will be a small delay as the backup node comes online, but the interruption in effective service is minimized.

## Sample Active-Passive configuration

A sample setup is used to illustrate the installation and configuration tasks for an Active-Passive configuration.

[Table 4-7](#) describes the objects created and used during the installation and configuration.

**Table 4-7** Active-Passive configuration objects

Object Name	Description
SYSTEM1 & SYSTEM2	servers
INST1_DG	cluster disk group
INST1_DATA_FILES	volume for SQL Server system data files
INST1_DB1_VOL	volume for SQL Server user-defined database
INST1_DB1_LOG	volume for SQL Server user-defined database log file
INST1_REGREP_VOL	volume that contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the SQL Server
SQL_CLUS1	SQL Server cluster
INST1	SQL Server instance
INST1-VS	SQL Server virtual server
INST1_SG	SQL Server service group

## IP addresses for sample Active-Passive configuration

In addition to preparing the names you want to assign the Active-Passive configuration objects, you should obtain all required IP addresses before beginning configuration. Each SQL Server virtual server requires its own virtual IP address. In the sample configuration there is one SQL Server virtual server. Therefore you would need one virtual server IP address. If you want to use the VCS Web Console or the notification service, you require a cluster IP address. The cluster IP address is also used by the Global Cluster Option for disaster recovery.

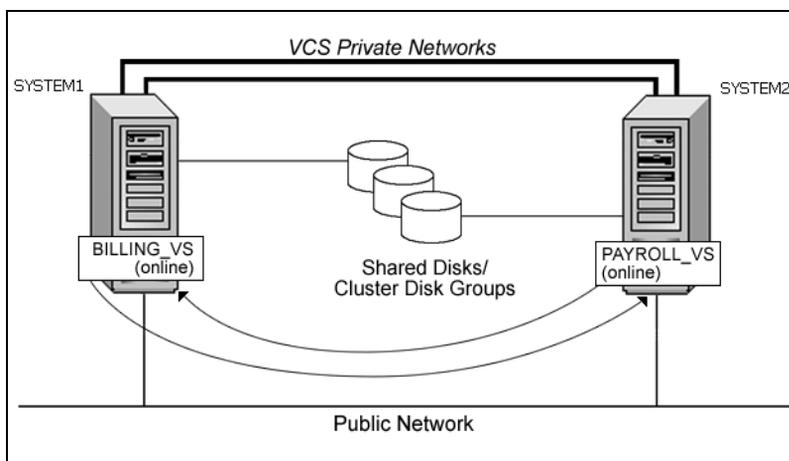
## Active-Active configuration

In an Active-Active SQL Server configuration, several instances are intended to run on a single node when necessary. A SQL Server instance is a completely independent SQL Server installation, with its own services, master database, storage, and memory resources. Each instance is defined uniquely by a separate SQL Server virtual server and service group.

A SQL Server instance can fail over to any of the other cluster nodes that you specify when you configure the SQL Server service group.

Figure 4-2 illustrates a two node Active-Active configuration.

**Figure 4-2** Active-Active configuration



The SQL Server databases are configured on the shared storage on volumes contained in cluster disk groups. Each SQL Server virtual server is configured in a separate SQL Server service group. Each service group can fail over to the other node in the cluster.

For example, consider a two-node cluster hosting two SQL Server virtual servers, BILLING\_VS and PAYROLL\_VS.

Table 4-8 and the sample configuration illustrate that the virtual servers are configured in two separate service groups with BILLING\_VS online on SYSTEM1 but able to fail over to SYSTEM2, and PAYROLL\_VS online on SYSTEM2 but able to fail over to SYSTEM1.

**Table 4-8** Active-Active configuration objects

SQL Virtual Server	Service Group	System List
BILLING_VS	BILLING_SG	SYSTEM1, SYSTEM2

**Table 4-8** Active-Active configuration objects

SQL Virtual Server	Service Group	System List
PAYROLL_VS	PAYROLL_SG	SYSTEM2, SYSTEM1

## Sample Active-Active configuration

A sample setup is used to illustrate the installation and configuration tasks for two instances of SQL Server, Billing and Payroll. During normal operation, one instance will be online on each of the two servers. If a failure occurs, the instance on the failing node will be brought online on the other server, resulting in two instances running on one server.

[Table 4-9](#) describes the objects created and used during the installation and configuration.

**Table 4-9** Active-Active configuration objects

Object Name	Description
SYSTEM1 & SYSTEM2	server names
BILLING_DG	cluster disk group for the billing instance
PAYROLL_DG	cluster disk group for the payroll instance
BILLING_VS_SYS_FILES	volume for the SQL Server system data files for the billing instance
PAYROLL_VS_SYS_FILES	volume for the SQL Server system data files for the payroll instance
BILLING_DATA	volume for a SQL Server user-defined database for the billing instance
PAYROLL_DATA	volume for a SQL Server user-defined database for the payroll instance
BILLING_LOG	volume for a SQL Server user-defined database log file for the billing instance
PAYROLL_LOG	volume for a SQL Server user-defined database log file for the payroll instance
BILLING_REGREP	volume for the list of registry keys replicated among the nodes for the billing instance
PAYROLL_REGREP	volume for the list of registry keys replicated among the nodes for the payroll instance
SQL_CLUS1	virtual SQL Server cluster

**Table 4-9** Active-Active configuration objects

Object Name	Description
BILLING_INST	instance name for the billing instance
PAYROLL_INST	instance name for the payroll instance
BILLING_VS	virtual SQL Server name for the billing instance
PAYROLL_VS	virtual SQL Server name for the payroll instance
BILLING_SG	SQL Server service group for the billing instance
PAYROLL_SG	SQL Server service group for the payroll instance

### IP addresses for sample Active-Active configuration

In addition to preparing the names you want to assign the Active-Active configuration objects, you should obtain all required IP addresses before beginning configuration. Each SQL Server virtual server requires its own virtual IP address. In the sample configuration there are two virtual servers: BILLING-VS and PAYROLL-VS. Therefore, you would need two virtual server IP addresses. If you want to use the VCS Web Console or the notification service, you require a cluster IP address. The cluster IP address is also used by the Global Cluster Option for disaster recovery.

## Key information for Active-Active configurations

[Table 4-10](#) summarizes key information about Active-Active configurations and multiple instances and cross-references additional information.

**Table 4-10** Key information for Active-Active configuration

Task	Description
Configuring disk groups and volumes	Create a separate set of cluster disk groups and volumes for each instance. You can create all the disk groups and volumes at one time or create them as a separate step for each instance.  See <a href="#">“Considerations for disk groups and volumes for multiple instances”</a> on page 121.
Configuring the cluster	If you are setting up a cluster with multiple instances of SQL, plan to add all nodes for all instances to the cluster the first time that you run the wizard. That way, you do not need to run the wizard again later to add the nodes.  See <a href="#">“Configuring the cluster”</a> on page 133.

**Table 4-10** Key information for Active-Active configuration

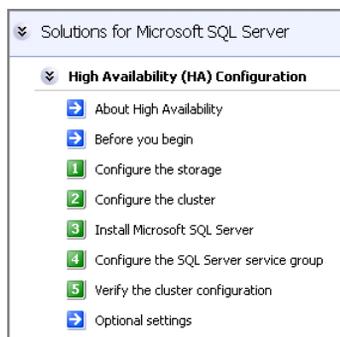
Task	Description
Installing and configuring SQL Server	Assign a unique instance name, instance ID, virtual server name, and port to each instance.  See <a href="#">“About installing multiple SQL instances”</a> on page 152.  See <a href="#">“Assigning ports for multiple SQL Server instances”</a> on page 162.
Configuring the service group	For an Active-Active configuration, create a separate service group for each instance. Each service group must have a unique name and virtual IP address. There are also special considerations for specifying the priority order of systems for failover.  See <a href="#">“Service group requirements for Active-Active configurations”</a> on page 164.

## Following the HA workflow in the Solutions Configuration Center

The Solutions Configuration Center helps you through the process of installing and configuring a new Veritas Storage Foundation HA environment for one or more instances of SQL Server, in either an Active-Passive or Active-Active configuration.

[Figure 4-3](#) shows the workflow under the High Availability (HA) Configuration in the Solutions Configuration Center.

**Figure 4-3** Configuration steps in the Solutions Configuration Center



If you are setting up multiple instances of SQL in the cluster, you may find it helpful to use the Configuration Center as follows:

- Under High Availability (HA) Configuration, complete all the steps for the first instance.
- For the next instance, do the following:
  - For step 1, Configure the storage, if you configured disk groups and volumes for the instance earlier, verify that they are available and continue with step 2.
  - For step 2, Configure the cluster, if you configured the nodes as part of the cluster earlier, as recommended, continue with step 3 and complete all subsequent steps.

See [“Following the workflow in the Configuration Center”](#) on page 64.

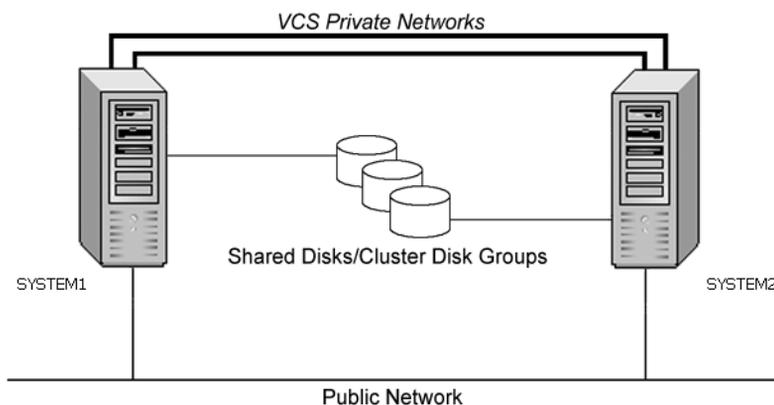
## Reviewing a standalone SQL Server configuration

You can incorporate an existing standalone SQL Server into a high availability environment in order to ensure that the mission critical SQL resource is always available.

This section describes the tasks necessary to create a virtual server in an Active-Passive SQL configuration. The active node of the cluster hosts the virtual server. The second node is a dedicated redundant server able to take over and host the virtual server in the event of a failure on the active node.

Figure 4-4 shows how the environment will look at the end of the configuration process.

Figure 4-4 Active-Passive configuration



The virtual SQL Server is online on SYSTEM1, serving client requests. The shared disks provide storage for the SQL Server databases. SYSTEM2 waits in a warm standby state as a backup node, prepared to begin handling client requests if SYSTEM1 becomes unavailable. From the user's perspective there will be a small delay as the backup node comes online, but the interruption in effective service is minimized.

## Sample standalone SQL Server configuration

A sample setup is used to illustrate the installation and configuration tasks for creating a high availability environment for a standalone SQL Server.

During the configuration process you will create virtual IP addresses for the following:

- SQL virtual server  
The IP address should be the same on all nodes.
- Cluster IP address  
This address is used by Veritas Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode) also referred to as Web Console.

You should have these IP addresses available before you start deploying your environment.

[Table 4-11](#) describes the objects created and used during the installation and configuration.

**Table 4-11** Standalone SQL Server configuration objects

Object Name	Description
SYSTEM1 & SYSTEM2	server names; SYSTEM1 is the existing standalone SQL Server
INST1_SG	Microsoft SQL Server service group
SQL_CLUS1	virtual SQL Server cluster
INST1_DG	cluster disk group
INST1_DATA_FILES	volume for Microsoft SQL Server system data files
INST1_DB1_VOL	volume for storing a Microsoft SQL Server user-defined database
INST1_DB1_LOG	volume for storing a Microsoft SQL Server user-defined database log file
INST1_REGREP_VOL	volume that contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the SQL Server
INST1	SQL Instance Name
INST1-VS	name of the SQL Virtual Server

## Reviewing the MSDTC configuration

Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (the MSDTC service) enables you to perform distributed transactions. A distributed transaction updates data on more than one computer in a network. The MSDTC service ensures that a transaction is successfully committed on each computer. A failure to commit on a single system aborts the transaction on all systems in the network. If a transaction spans across more than one computer in the network, you must ensure that the MSDTC service is running on all the computers. Also, all the computers must be able to communicate with each other.

MSDTC servers can co-exist with SQL servers on the same cluster nodes. If the MSDTC server and the SQL server are running on the same node, the MSDTC client is configured in the default configuration. If the MSDTC Server is not configured on the same node as the SQL Server, then the MSDTC client must be configured on that node. In general, you must configure the MSDTC client on all nodes except the node on which the MSDTC Server is configured. The MSDTC client and the MSDTC server must not run on the same cluster node.

For example, consider a SQL Server configuration in a VCS cluster that spans four nodes and two sets of shared storage. The shared storage is managed using Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows (SFW).

The following configurations are possible:

- SQL Server and MSDTC Server are configured on different nodes
- SQL Server is configured on the same node as the MSDTC Server
- SQL Server and MSDTC Server are configured on nodes in different clusters

[Figure 4-5](#) shows the configuration for SQL Server and MSDTC Server on different nodes.

**Figure 4-5** MSDTC Server and SQL Server configured on different nodes

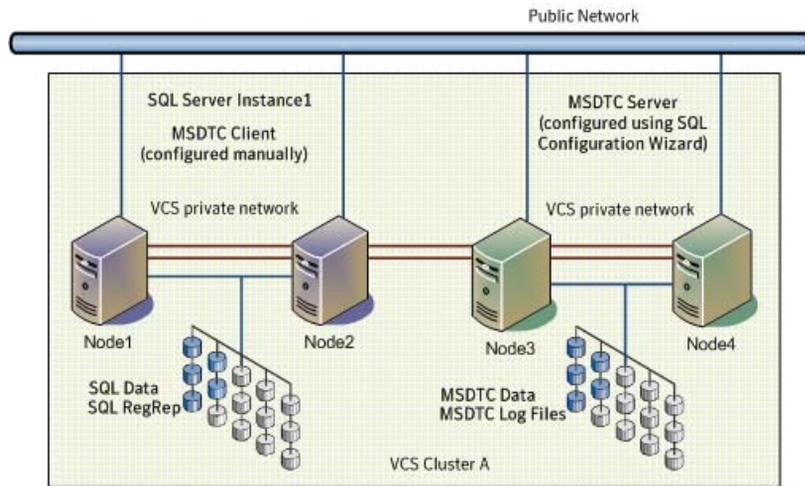


Figure 4-6 shows the configuration for SQL Server configured on the same node as the MSDTC server.

**Figure 4-6** MSDTC Server and SQL Server configured on same nodes

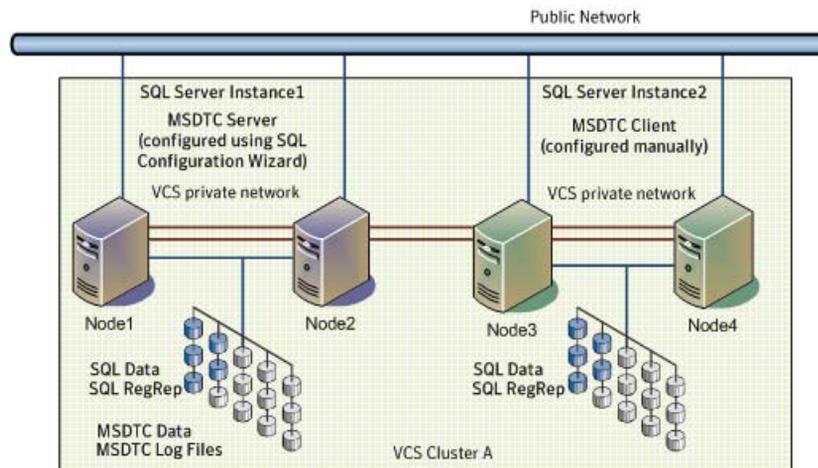
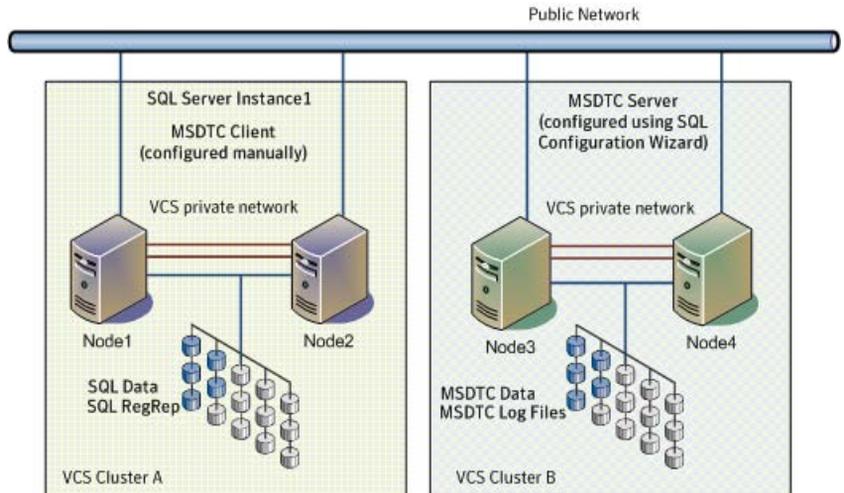


Figure 4-7 shows the configuration where SQL Server and MSDTC Server are configured on nodes belonging to different clusters.

Figure 4-7 MSDTC Server and SQL Server configured in different clusters

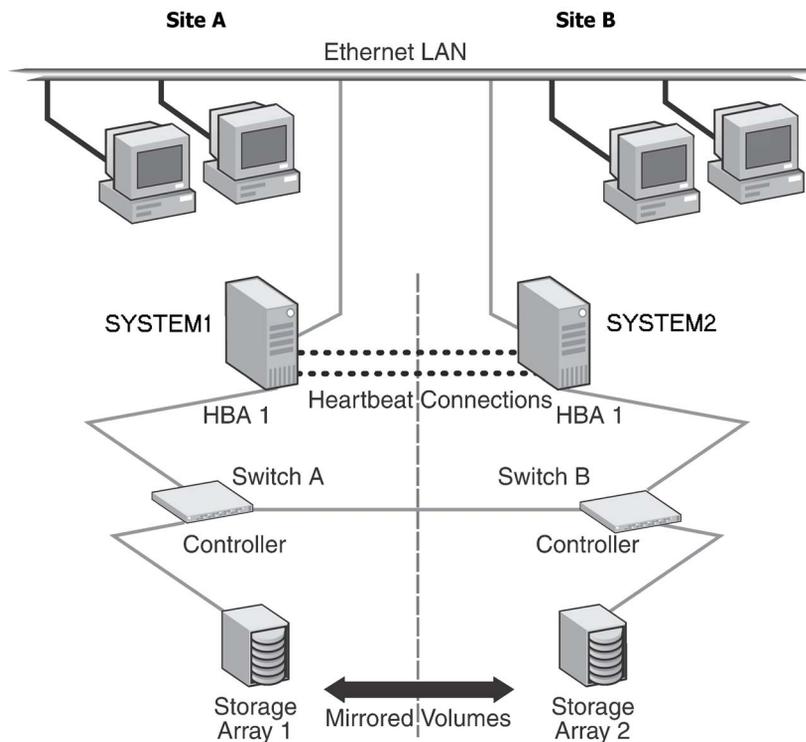


## Reviewing the campus cluster configuration

A sample campus cluster configuration is a two-node campus cluster with each node in a separate site (Site A or Site B). In this example, each node has its own storage array with the same number of disks and contains mirrored data of the storage on the other array.

Figure 4-8 illustrates an Active-Passive configuration for SQL Server with one to one failover capabilities.

Figure 4-8 Campus cluster: Active-Passive configuration



In an Active-Passive configuration, the active node of the cluster hosts the SQL virtual server. The second node is a dedicated redundant server able to take over and host the virtual server in the event of a failure on the active node. In this case, the SQL virtual server can fail over from SYSTEM1 to SYSTEM2 and vice versa.

The two nodes can be located miles apart and are connected via a single subnet and Fibre Channel SAN. Each node has its own storage array with an equal

number of disks and contains mirrored data of the storage on the other array. The example describes a generic database application.

Plan for an equal number and size of disks on the two sites, because each disk group should contain the same number of disks on each site for the mirrored volumes.

## Campus cluster failover using the ForceImport attribute

Automated recovery is handled differently in a VCS campus cluster than with a VCS local cluster. The outcomes of failure situations depend on the settings for the ForceImport attribute of the VMDg resource.

You can set this attribute as follows:

- ForceImport set to 1 automatically forces the import of the disk groups to the other node)
- ForceImport set to 0 does not force the import

The advantage of automatic failover in the event of site failure comes at the cost of potential data loss if all storage and network communication paths between the sites are severed. Choose an option that is suitable given your cluster infrastructure, uptime requirements, and administrative capabilities.

You can use the VCS Java Console or command line to modify the ForceImport attribute.

For more information on modifying ForceImport, see [“Setting the ForceImport attribute to 1 after a site failure”](#) on page 188.

[Table 4-12](#) lists failure situations and the outcomes depending on the settings for the ForceImport attribute of the VMDg resource.

**Table 4-12** Failure situations in a VCS campus cluster

Failure Situation	ForceImport set to 0 (import not forced)	ForceImport set to 1 (automatic forced import)
<b>1) Application fault</b> May mean the services stopped for an application, a NIC failed, or a database table went offline.	Application automatically moves to another node.	Service Group failover is automatic on the standby or preferred system or node.
<b>2) Server failure</b> May mean a power cord became unplugged or a failure caused the system to stop responding.	Application automatically moves to other node. 100% of the disks are still available.	Service Group failover is automatic on the standby or preferred system or node. 100% of the mirrored disks are still available.

**Table 4-12** Failure situations in a VCS campus cluster

<b>Failure Situation</b>	<b>Forcelmport set to 0 (import not forced)</b>	<b>Forcelmport set to 1 (automatic forced import)</b>
<p><b>3) Failure of disk array or all disks</b>                      Remaining disks in mirror are still accessible from the other site.</p>	<p>No interruption of service. Remaining disks in mirror are still accessible from the other node.</p>	<p>The Service Group does not failover. 50% of the mirrored disk is still available at remaining site.</p>
<p><b>4) Zone failure</b>                      Complete Site failure, all accessibility to the servers and storage is lost.</p>	<p>Manual intervention required to online the Service Group at remaining site. Can not automatically import 50% of mirrored disk.</p>	<p>Automatic failover of Service Group to online site. Force Import must be set to True before site failure to ensure VCS can import 50% of mirrored disk.</p>
<p><b>5) Split-brain (loss of both heartbeats)</b>                      If the public network link serves as a low-priority heartbeat, the assumption is made that the link is also lost.</p>	<p>No interruption of service. Can't import disks because the original node still has the SCSI reservation.</p>	<p>No interruption of service. Failover does not occur due to Service Group resources remaining online on the original nodes. Example: Online node has SCSI reservation to own disk.</p>
<p><b>6) Storage interconnect lost</b>                      Fibre interconnect severed.</p>	<p>No interruption of service. Disks on the same node are functioning. Mirroring is not working.</p>	<p>No interruption of service. Service Group resources remain online, but 50% of the mirror disk becomes detached.</p>
<p><b>7) Split-brain and storage interconnect lost</b>                      If a single pipe is used between buildings for the Ethernet and storage, this situation can occur.</p>	<p>No interruption of service. Cannot import with only 50% of disks available. Disks on the same node are functioning. Mirroring is not working.</p>	<p>Automatically imports 50% of mirrored disk to the alternate node.                       Disks online for a short period in both locations but offlined again due to IP and other resources being online on original node. No interruption of service.</p>

## Reinstating faulted hardware in a campus cluster

Once a failure occurs and an application is migrated to another node or site, it is important to know what will happen when the original hardware is reinstated.

[Table 4-13](#) lists the behavior when various hardware components affecting the configuration (array or disks, site hardware, networking cards or cabling, storage interconnect, etc.) are reinstated after failure.

**Table 4-13** Behavior exhibited when hardware is reinstated

Failure Situation, before Reinstating the Configuration	ForceImport set to 0 (import not forced)	ForceImport set to 1 (automatic force import)
<b>3) Failure of disk array or all disks</b> Remaining disks in mirror are still accessible from the other site.	No interruption of service. Resync the mirror from the remote site.	Same behavior.
<b>4) Site failure</b> All access to the server and storage is lost.	Inter-node heartbeat communication is restored and the original cluster node becomes aware that the application is online at the remote site. Resync the mirror from the remote site.	Same behavior.
<b>5) Split-brain situation (loss of both heartbeats)</b>	No interruption of service.	Same behavior.
<b>6) Storage interconnect lost</b> Fibre interconnect severed.	No interruption of service. Resync the mirror from the original site.	Same behavior.
<b>7) Split-brain situation and storage interconnect lost</b>	No interruption of service. Resync the mirror from the original site.	VCS alerts administrator that volumes are online at both sites. Resync the mirror from the copy with the latest data.

The numbers 3 through 7 in the [Table 4-13](#) refer to the scenarios in the table in [Campus cluster failover using the ForceImport attribute](#).

Situations 1 and 2 have no effect when reinstated. Keep in mind that the cluster has already responded to the initial failure.

While the outcomes of using both settings of the ForceImport attribute for most scenarios are the same, the ForceImport option provides automatic failover in the event of site failure. This advantage comes at the cost of potential data loss if all storage and network communication paths between the sites are severed. Choose an option that is suitable given your cluster infrastructure, uptime requirements, and administrative capabilities.

## Reviewing the Replicated Data Cluster configuration

During the Replicated Data Cluster configuration process you will create virtual IP addresses for the following:

- SQL virtual server  
The IP address should be the same on all nodes at the primary and secondary zones.
- Replication IP address for the primary zone
- Replication IP address for the secondary zone

You should have these IP addresses available before you start deploying your environment.

### Sample replicated data cluster configuration

The sample setup for a Replicated Data Cluster has four servers, two for the primary zone and two for the secondary zone. The nodes will form two separate clusters, one at the primary zone and one at the secondary zone.

[Table 4-14](#) describes the objects created and used during the installation and configuration.

**Table 4-14** Replicated Data Cluster configuration objects

Object Name	Description
Primary zone	
SYSTEM1 & SYSTEM2	First and second nodes of the primary zone
INST1_SG	Microsoft SQL Server service group
INST1-VS	virtual SQL Server cluster
INST1	SQL instance name
INST1_DG	cluster disk group for SQL system database and files

**Table 4-14** Replicated Data Cluster configuration objects

<b>Object Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
INST1_DATA_FILES	volume for Microsoft SQL Server system data files
INST1_REGREP_VOL	volume that contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the SQL Server
INST1_REPLOG	Replicator log volume required by VVR
INST1_DB1_DG	Cluster disk group for SQL Server user-defined database and files
INST1_DB1_VOL	volume for storing a Microsoft SQL Server user-defined database
INST1_DB1_LOG	volume for storing a Microsoft SQL Server user-defined database log file
INST1_DB1_REPLOG	Replicator log volume required by VVR for SQL user-defined database
<b>Secondary zone</b>	
SYSTEM3 & SYSTEM4	First and second nodes of the secondary zone
	All the other parameters are the same as on the primary zone.
<b>RDS and VVR Components</b>	
INST1_RDS	RDS name for SQL system database and files
INST1_RVG	RVG name for SQL system database and files
INST1_RVG_SG	Replication service group for SQL system database and files
INST1_DB1_RDS	RDS name for SQL Server user-defined database and files
INST1_DB1_RVG	RVG name for SQL Server user-defined database and files
INST1_DB1_RVG_SG	Replication service group for SQL Server user-defined database and files

## About setting up a Replicated Data Cluster configuration

In the example, SQL Server is configured as a VCS service group in a four-node cluster, with two nodes in the primary RDC zone and two in the secondary RDC zone. In the event of a failure on the primary node, VCS can fail over the SQL Server instance to the second node in the primary zone.

The process involves the steps described in the following topics:

- [About setting up replication](#)
- [About configuring and migrating the service group](#)

## About setting up replication

You set up replication between the shared disk groups. You use VVR to group the shared data volumes into a Replicated Volume Group (RVG), and create the VVR Secondary on hosts in your secondary zone.

You create a Replicated Data Set (RDS) with the Primary RVG consisting of the shared volumes between the nodes in the first zone and Secondary RVG consisting of shared volumes between nodes in the second zone. You use the same disk group and RVG name in both zones so that the MountV resources will mount the same block devices.

## About configuring and migrating the service group

For a successful wide-area failover, the mount points and applications must fail over to the secondary RDC zone. Additionally, the VVR secondary disk group and RVG must be imported and started on the secondary RDC zone.

Figure 4-9 shows a screen from the VCS Cluster Manager (Java Console) that depicts a typical SQL Server 2000 service group RDC configuration.

Figure 4-9 Typical SQL Server 2000 service group RDC configuration

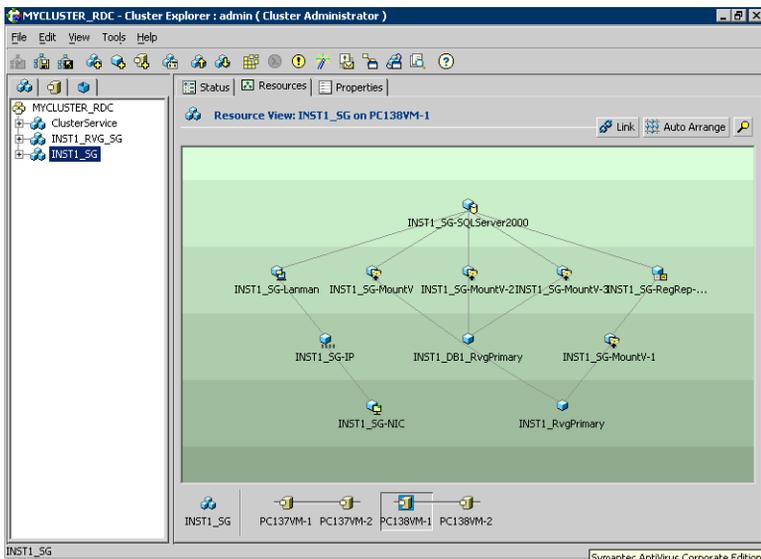
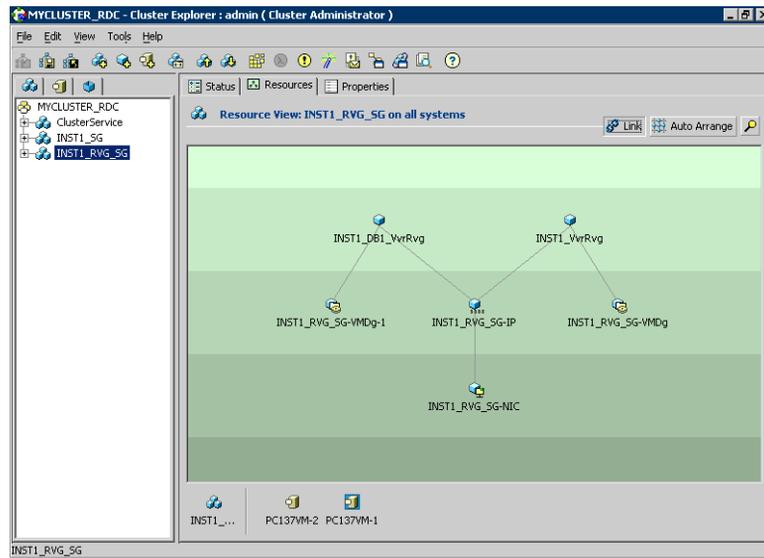


Figure 4-10 shows a screen from the VCS Cluster Manager (Java Console) that depicts a typical SQL replication service group (RVG) configuration.

Figure 4-10 Typical SQL replication service group (RVG) configuration



In the RDC configuration, consider a case where the primary RDC zone suffers a total failure of the shared storage. In this situation, none of the nodes in the primary zone see any device.

The service group cannot fail over locally within the primary RDC zone, because the shared volumes cannot be mounted on any node. So, the service group must fail over to a node in the current secondary RDC zone.

The RVGPrimary agent ensures that VVR volumes are made writable. The application can be started at the secondary RDC zone and run there until the problem with the local storage is corrected.

If the storage problem is corrected, you can switch the application back to the primary zone using VCS.

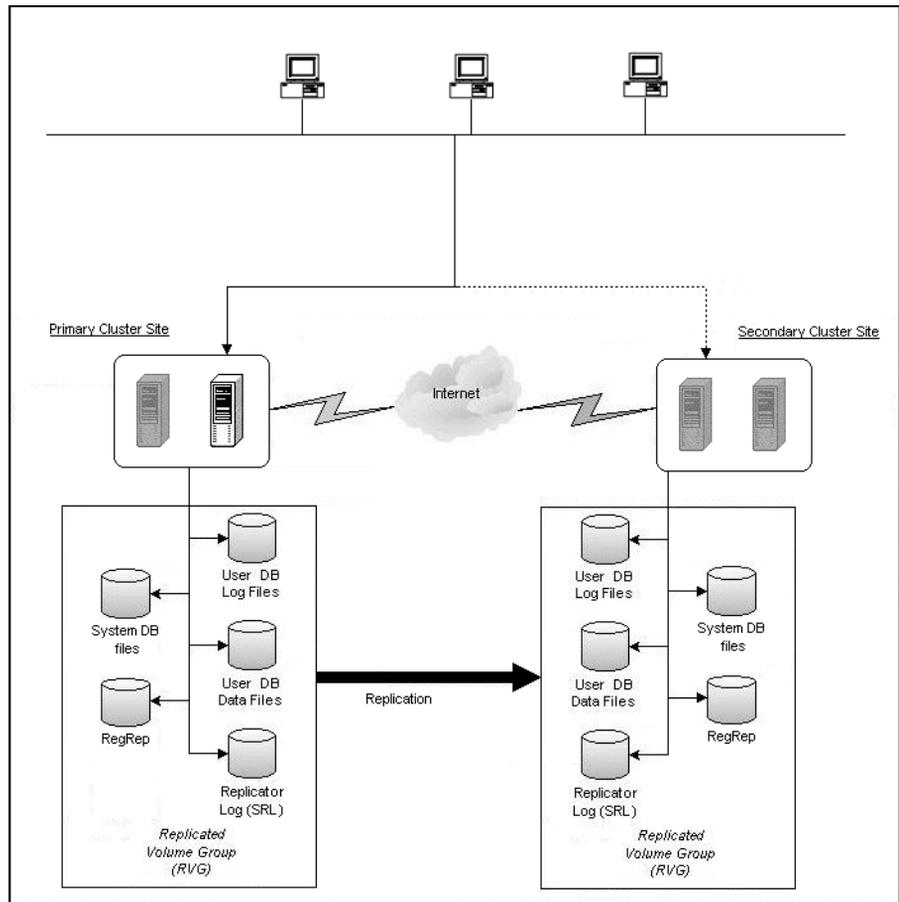
Before switching the application back to the original primary RDC zone, you must resynchronize any changed data from the active secondary RDC zone since the failover. Once the resynchronization completes, switch the service group to the primary zone.

## Reviewing the disaster recovery configuration

You may be preparing to configure both a primary site and a secondary site for disaster recovery.

Figure 4-11 illustrates a typical Active-Passive disaster recovery configuration using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR).

**Figure 4-11** Typical VVR configuration



In the example illustration, the primary site consists of two nodes, SYSTEM1 and SYSTEM2. Similarly the secondary setup consists of two nodes, SYSTEM3 and SYSTEM4. Each site has a clustered setup with the nodes set up appropriately for failover within the site. The cluster on the primary site has a shared disk group that is used to create the volumes required by VVR for setting up the Replicated Volume Group (RVG). The Microsoft SQL Server application data is stored on the volumes that are under the control of the RVG.

If the Microsoft SQL Server server on SYSTEM1 fails, SQL Server comes online on node SYSTEM2 and begins servicing requests. From the user's perspective there might be a small delay as the backup node comes online, but the interruption in effective service is minimal. If there is a disaster at the primary site, SYSTEM3 at the secondary site takes over.

You can choose to configure replication using VVR or an agent-supported array-based hardware replication. You can use the DR wizard to configure VVR replication or required options for the VCS agents for EMC SRDF or Hitachi TrueCopy. To use the wizard with any other agent-supported array-based replication, you must complete configuring global clustering with the wizard before configuring replication on the array.

During the configuration process you will create virtual IP addresses. The virtual IP address for the SQL virtual server at the primary and disaster recovery site can be the same if both sites can exist on the same network segment. Otherwise, you need to allocate one IP address for the virtual server at the primary site and a different IP address for the virtual server at the disaster recovery site. You should have these IP addresses available before you start deploying your environment.

## Sample disaster recovery configuration

The sample setup has four servers, two for the primary site and two for the secondary site. The nodes will form two separate clusters, one at the primary site and one at the secondary site.

[Table 4-15](#) describes the objects created and used during the installation and configuration.

**Table 4-15** Sample Disaster Recovery configuration objects

Object Name	Description
Primary site	
SYSTEM1 & SYSTEM2	first and second nodes of the primary site
INST1_SG	Microsoft SQL Server service group
SQL_CLUS1	virtual SQL Server cluster
INST1-VS	virtual server name
INST1_DG	cluster disk group
INST1_DATA_FILES	volume for Microsoft SQL Server system data files
INST1_DB1_VOL	volume for storing a Microsoft SQL Server user-defined database
INST1_DB1_LOG	volume for storing a Microsoft SQL Server user-defined database log file
INST1_REGREP_VOL	volume that contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the SQL Server

**Table 4-15** Sample Disaster Recovery configuration objects

Object Name	Description
INST1_REPLOG	(VVR only) replicator log volume required by VVR
INST1	SQL Instance Name
<b>Secondary site</b>	
SYSTEM3 & SYSTEM4	First and second nodes of the secondary site
	All the other parameters are the same as on the primary site.
<b>DR Components (VVR only)</b>	
INST1_DB1_RDS	RDS Name
INST1_DB1_RVG	RVG Name
INST1_DB1_RVG_SG	Replication service group

## IP addresses for sample disaster recovery configuration

In addition to preparing the names you want to assign configuration objects, you should obtain all required IP addresses before beginning configuration.

You specify the following addresses during the replication process:

SQL virtual server IP address	For a disaster recovery configuration, the virtual IP address for the SQL virtual server at the primary and disaster recovery site can be the same if both sites can exist on the same network segment. Otherwise, you need to allocate one IP address for the virtual server at the primary site and a different IP address for the virtual server at the disaster recovery site.
Cluster IP address	You need one for the primary site cluster and one for the secondary site cluster.
Replication IP address	You need two IP addresses per application instance, one for the primary site and one for the secondary site.

## Supported disaster recovery configurations for service group dependencies

Service group dependencies have special requirements and limitations for disaster recovery configuration and for actions to be taken in a disaster recovery scenario.

Service group dependency configurations are described in detail in the VCS documentation.

See *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

For disaster recovery only certain dependent service group configurations are supported:

- Online local soft
- Online local firm
- Online local hard

If the service group has an unsupported type of dependency and you select it in the DR wizard, you receive an error notification when you attempt to move to the next wizard page.

The Disaster Recovery wizard supports only one level of dependency (one child). If you need to configure more levels, you will need to add the service group and the dependency link manually on the secondary site after you finish running the DR wizard.

The wizard clones dependent service groups as global groups.

## Deployment

This section contains the following chapters:

- [Installing and configuring SFW HA](#)
- [Installing SQL Server](#)
- [Configuring SQL Server for failover](#)
- [Configuring campus clusters for SQL Server](#)
- [Configuring Replicated Data Clusters for SQL Server](#)
- [Configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server](#)
- [Testing fault readiness by running a fire drill](#)



# Installing and configuring SFW HA

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Configuring the storage hardware and network](#)
- [Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows](#)
- [Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server](#)
- [About managing disk groups and volumes](#)
- [Configuring the cluster](#)

# Configuring the storage hardware and network

Use the following procedures to configure the hardware and verify DNS settings. Repeat this procedure for every node in the cluster.

## To configure the hardware

- 1 Install the required network adapters, and SCSI controllers or Fibre Channel HBA.
- 2 Connect the network adapters on each system using the following guidelines:
  - To prevent lost heartbeats on the private networks, and to prevent VCS from mistakenly declaring a system down, Symantec recommends disabling the Ethernet autonegotiation options on the private network adapters. Contact the NIC manufacturer for details on this process.
  - Symantec recommends removing TCP/IP from private NICs to lower system overhead.
- 3 Use independent hubs or switches for each VCS communication network (GAB and LLT). You can use cross-over Ethernet cables for two-node clusters. LLT supports hub-based or switch network paths, or two-system clusters with direct network links.
- 4 Verify that each system can access the storage devices. Verify that each system recognizes the attached shared disk and that the attached shared disks are visible.

## To verify the DNS settings and binding order

- 1 From the Control Panel, access the Network Connections window.
- 2 Ensure the public network adapter is the first bound adapter as follows:
  - From the Advanced menu, click **Advanced Settings**.
  - In the Adapters and Bindings tab, verify the public adapter is the first adapter in the Connections list. If necessary, use the arrow button to move the adapter to the top of the list.
- 3 Ensure that DNS name resolution is enabled. Make sure that you use the public network adapter, and not those configured for the private network. Do the following:
  - In the Network Connections window, double-click the adapter for the public network to access its properties.
  - In the Public Status dialog box, on the General tab, click **Properties**.

- In the Public Properties dialog box, on the General tab, select the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** check box and click **Properties**.
- Select the **Use the following DNS server addresses** option and verify the correct value for the IP address of the DNS server.
- Click **Advanced**.
- In the DNS tab, make sure the **Register this connection's address in DNS** check box is selected. Make sure the correct domain suffix is entered in the **DNS suffix for this connection** field.

# Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows

The product installer enables you to install the software for Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows. The installer automatically installs Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows and Veritas Cluster Server. You must select the option to install the Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for SQL. For a disaster recovery configuration, select the option to install GCO, and depending on your replication solution, select the option to install VVR or a hardware replication agent.

When installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows, ensure that there are no parallel installations, live updates, or Microsoft Windows updates in progress.

## Setting Windows driver signing options

Some drivers provided by Symantec may not be signed by Microsoft. Depending upon your installation options, these unsigned drivers may stop your installation.

When installing on systems running Windows Server 2003, you must set the Windows driver signing options to allow installation.

The following table describes the product installer behavior on local and remote systems when installing options with unsigned drivers on Windows Server 2003.

**Table 5-1** Installation behavior with unsigned drivers

Driver Signing Setting	Installation behavior on the local system	Installation behavior on remote systems
Ignore	Always allowed	Always allowed
Warn	Warning message, user interaction required	Installation proceeds. The user must log on locally to the remote system to respond to the dialog box to complete the installation.
Block	Never allowed	Never allowed

On local systems set the driver signing option to either Ignore or Warn. On remote systems set the option to Ignore in order to allow the installation to proceed without user interaction.

---

**Note:** Windows Server 2008 does not allow you to change the driver signing option. Symantec provides an installation option to install a Symantec Trusted certificate to allow installation of Symantec drivers that are not certified by Microsoft. For details, see “[Installing Symantec Trusted certificate for unsigned drivers](#)” on page 111.

---

#### To change the driver signing options on each system

- 1 Log on locally to the system.
- 2 Open the Control Panel and click **System**.
- 3 Click the **Hardware** tab and click **Driver Signing**.
- 4 In the Driver Signing Options dialog box, note the current setting, and select **Ignore** or another option from the table that will allow installation to proceed.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Repeat for each computer.  
If you do not change the driver signing option, the installation may fail on that computer during validation. After you complete the installation, reset the driver signing option to its previous state.

### Installing Symantec Trusted certificate for unsigned drivers

The product installer provides an installation option for Symantec Trusted Software Publisher Certificate for Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows drivers that are not certified by Microsoft.

If you select this installation option, a Symantec Trusted certificate is installed on the systems you select for installation.

---

**Warning:** On Windows Server 2008, if this option is not selected, a remote install will not install any SFW drivers that are not certified by Microsoft. No notification is given and it will appear that installation was successful, but issues can arise later because the drivers were not installed.

---

If installing locally on Windows Server 2008, if this option is not selected, a driver signing popup will be displayed requiring user interaction.

If you select this option when installing on Windows Server 2003, you do not need to set the driver signing options to Warn or Ignore.

## Installing Storage Foundation HA for Windows

Install Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows.

### To install the product

- 1 Insert the DVD containing the installation software into your system's disk drive or download the installation software from the Symantec website.
- 2 Allow the autorun feature to start the installation or double-click **Setup.exe**. The Select Product screen appears.
- 3 Review the links on the Select Product screen.  
Links on this screen access Late Breaking News, the Configuration Checker, as well as begin the process to install Storage Foundation HA for Windows. Click on **Read Late Breaking News** for the latest information about updates, patches, and software issues regarding this release.
- 4 Click **Storage Foundation HA 5.1 SP1 for Windows**.
- 5 Do one of the following:
  - Click **Complete/Custom** to begin installation.
  - Click the **Administrative Console** link to install only the client components.
- 6 Review the Welcome message and the listed prerequisites. Ensure that any of the listed prerequisites applicable to your installation are met prior to proceeding.  
Click **Next**.
- 7 Read the License Agreement by using the scroll arrows in the view window. If you agree to the license terms, click the radio button for **I AGREE TO the terms of the license agreement**, and then click **Next**.
- 8 Enter the product license key before adding license keys for features. Enter the license key in the top field and click **Add**.  
If you do not have a license key, click **Next** to use the default evaluation license key. This license key is valid for a limited evaluation period only.
- 9 Repeat for additional license keys. Click **Next**
  - To remove a license key, click the key to select it and click **Remove**.
  - To see the license key's details, click the key.
- 10 Select the appropriate SFW product options and click **Next**. Be sure to select the following as appropriate for your installation:

Veritas Cluster Server Data- Required to configure high availability for SQL Server.  
base Agent for SQL

Client	Required to install VCS Cluster Manager (Java console) and Veritas Enterprise Administrator console, which are used during configuring high availability. Also required to install the Solutions Configuration Center which provides information and wizards to assist configuration.
Global Cluster Option	Required for a disaster recovery configuration only.
Veritas Volume Replicator	If you plan to use VVR for replication, select the option to install VVR.
High Availability Hardware Replication Agents	If you plan to use hardware replication, select the appropriate hardware replication agent.

**11** Select the following for the installation and click **Next**.

Domain	<p>Select a domain from the list.</p> <p>Depending on domain and network size, speed, and activity, the domain and computer lists can take some time to populate.</p>
Computer	<p>To add a computer for installation, select it from the Computer list or type the computer's name in the Computer field. Then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>To remove a computer after adding it, click the name in the Selected computers for installation field and click <b>Remove</b>.</p> <p>Click a computer's name to see its description.</p> <p>When installing the software on multiple computers in a single installation using the product installer, all computers must have the same platform type (for example, x86 or x64). However, the computers can have different Windows operating systems. For example, you can install the software on multiple computers at once running Windows 2003 and Windows 2008.</p>

Install Path

Optionally, change the installation path.

- To change the path, select a computer in the Selected computers for installation field, type the new path, and click **Change**.
- To restore the default path, select a computer and click **Default**.

The default path is:

C:\Program Files\Veritas

For 64-bit installations, the default path is:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Veritas

**12** When the domain controller and the computer running the installation program are on different subnets, the installer may be unable to locate the target computers. In this situation, after the installer displays an error message, enter the host names or the IP addresses of the missing computers manually.

**13** The installer checks the prerequisites for the selected computers and displays the results. Review the information and click **Next**.  
If a computer fails validation, address the issue, and repeat the validation. Click the computer in the list to display information about the failure. Click **Validate Again** to begin the validation process again.

**14** Depending upon your earlier product installer selections and operating system, you may receive one or more of the following messages.

If you are using multiple paths and selected a specific DSM, you receive the Veritas Dynamic Multi-pathing warning:

The time to install the Veritas Dynamic Multi-pathing MPIO feature depends on the number of physical paths connected during the installation. To reduce installation time for this feature, Symantec recommends only one physical path connection during installation. After the installation completes, reconnect additional physical paths before rebooting the system.

If applicable to your installation, perform the above procedure.

If you are using multiple paths and selected a specific DSM on a Windows Server 2008 machine, you receive an additional message:

On Windows Server 2008, the Microsoft Multipath input/output (Microsoft MPIO) feature must be enabled before installing DMP Device Specific Modules (DSMs).

If applicable to your installation, perform the above procedure.

When installing Veritas Storage Foundation for Windows (Server Components) with the MSCS option selected, you receive the following message:

When installing Veritas Storage Foundation 5.1 for Windows (Server Components) with the MSCS option, you may want MSCS Quorum Arbitration Time (Min. and Max) to be adjusted to ensure optimal functionality with Veritas dynamic volumes with MSCS.

For additional information, see the *Storage Foundation for Windows Administrator Guide* for details.

If applicable to your installation, perform the above procedure.

- 15 When finished reviewing the message or messages, click **OK**.
- 16 The Summary screen appears displaying an Install report. Review the information in the Install report. Click **Back** to make changes, if necessary. Click **Install** if information is validated.
- 17 The Installation Status screen displays status messages and the progress of the installation.  
If an installation fails, click **Next** to review the report and address the reason for failure. You may have to either repair the installation or uninstall and re-install.
- 18 When the installation completes, review the summary screen and click **Next**.
- 19 If you are installing on remote nodes, click **Reboot**. Note that you cannot reboot the local node now, and that failed nodes are unchecked by default. Click the check box next to the remote nodes that you want to reboot.
- 20 When the nodes have finished rebooting successfully, the Reboot Status shows Online and the **Next** button is available. Click **Next**.
- 21 Review the log files and click **Finish**.
- 22 Click **Yes** to reboot the local node.

## Resetting the driver signing options

After completing the installation sequence, reset the driver signing options on each computer.

### To reset the driver signing options

- 1 Open the Control Panel, and click **System**.
- 2 Click the **Hardware** tab and click **Driver Signing**.

- 3 In the Driver Signing Options dialog box, reset the option to **Warn** or **Block**.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Repeat for each computer.

# Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server

Before installing SQL Server, you must create cluster disk groups and volumes using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) console installed with SFW.

Planning cluster disk groups and volumes is covered in the following topics:

- [“About cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 117
- [“Prerequisites for configuring cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 118
- [“Considerations for converting existing shared storage to cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 119
- [“Considerations for converting existing shared storage to cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 119
- [“Considerations for volumes for a VVR configuration”](#) on page 120
- [“Considerations for disk groups and volumes for multiple instances”](#) on page 121
- [“Sample disk group and volume configuration”](#) on page 122
- [“MSDTC sample disk group and volume configuration”](#) on page 123

Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes is covered in the following topics:

- [“Viewing the available disk storage”](#) on page 123
- [“Creating a cluster disk group”](#) on page 123
- [“Creating volumes”](#) on page 125

## About cluster disk groups and volumes

SFW uses disk groups to organize disks or LUNs for management purposes. A dynamic disk group is a collection of disks that is imported or deported as a single unit. A cluster disk group is a special type of dynamic disk group that is created on shared storage and is designed to be moved or to failover between hosts. In order to prevent data corruption a cluster disk group uses SCSI reservations to protect the shared disks and limits access to a single host at a time.

Volumes are logical entities that are comprised of portions of one or more physical disks and are accessed by a drive letter or mount point. Volumes can be configured for performance and high availability.

---

**Note:** You create a cluster disk group and volumes on only one node of a cluster. The volumes can be accessed by other nodes in a high-availability cluster by first deporting the cluster disk group from the current node and then importing it on the desired node. In a campus cluster, the volumes are mirrored across the storage arrays.

---

---

**Note:** If your storage devices are SCSI-3 compliant, and you wish to use SCSI-3 Persistent Group Reservations (PGR), you must enable SCSI-3 support using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA - *Control Panel - System Settings*). See the *Veritas Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide* for more information.

---

## Prerequisites for configuring cluster disk groups and volumes

Before you create a disk group, consider the following items:

- The type of volume configurations that are required
- The number of volumes or LUNs required for the disk group
- The implications of backup and restore operations on the disk group setup
- The size of databases and logs that depend on the traffic load

Complete the following tasks before you create the cluster disk group and volumes for the SQL instance:

- Determine the layout or configuration for each volume and the total number of disks needed. Symantec recommends that you place SQL Server user database files and log files on separate volumes.
- Determine the initial size necessary for the volumes. You may increase the volume size at a later time using the Expand Volume command but you can not decrease the size.
- Verify that the disks you plan to include in the cluster disk group are shared and are available from all nodes. If new disks are installed, you must rescan, and if necessary, use the Write Signature command in order to identify the disks to the operating system.
- Verify that the drive letters that will be assigned to the volumes are available on all nodes so that the volumes can be accessed from any node.

You may be configuring new shared storage for the high availability environment, or the existing standalone SQL Server databases and logs may already be on shared storage.

If the existing databases and logs are already on shared storage, read the following topic:

- [“Considerations for converting existing shared storage to cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 119

For campus clusters, each disk group must contain an equal number of disks on each site. Each volume should be a mirrored volume with one plex of the volume on Site A’s storage array and the other plex of the volume on Site B’s storage array.

For more information on disk groups and volumes for campus clusters, read the following topic:

- [“Considerations for disks and volumes for campus clusters”](#) on page 120

For a Replicated Data Cluster configuration or a disaster recovery configuration using Veritas Volume Replicator, read the following topic:

- [“Considerations for volumes for a VVR configuration”](#) on page 120

## Considerations for converting existing shared storage to cluster disk groups and volumes

The databases and logs for your existing standalone SQL Server may already be on shared storage. In this case, when you create cluster disk groups, you specify the disks that contain the existing databases and logs.

Creating a disk group converts the disks from basic disks to dynamic disks. Partitions on the disks are automatically converted to volumes on the dynamic disks.

Therefore, if your existing disk layout contains databases and logs in the same partition, they become part of the same volume in the cluster disk group. If the disk contains multiple partitions, each containing a user database, each partition becomes a separate volume, but all will become part of the same cluster disk group. If this configuration does not meet your requirements, you may want to modify your disk layout before creating the cluster disk group.

For additional information on converting basic to dynamic disks, see *Veritas Storage Foundation Administrator’s Guide*.

Symantec recommends creating a separate 100 MB RegRep volume that contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the SQL service. However, if no additional disks are available on the shared storage, you can specify an existing volume as the registry replication path during service group creation.

For a disaster recovery configuration using Veritas Volume Replicator, you need to allow additional disk space for a Storage Replicator Log volume.

See [“Considerations for volumes for a VVR configuration”](#) on page 120.

## Considerations for disks and volumes for campus clusters

Ensure that each disk group has the same number of disks on each site. Each volume must be a mirrored volume with one plex of the volume on Site A's storage array and the other plex of the volume on Site B's storage array.

While creating the dynamic disk groups and volumes at Site A, note carefully which disks and volumes are allocated. These will later become the Site A plexes for the mirrors.

Consider the following when creating new volumes:

- For campus clusters, when creating a new volume, you must select the “mirrored across enclosures” option.
- Choosing “Mirrored” and the “mirrored across” option without having two enclosures that meet requirements causes new volume creation to fail.
- Logging can slow performance.
- Symantec recommends using either simple mirrored (concatenated) or striped mirrored options for the new volumes. Striped mirrored gives you better performance compared to concatenated.  
When selecting striped mirrored, select two columns in order to stripe one enclosure that is mirrored to the second enclosure.
- You cannot select RAID-5 for mirroring.
- Selecting “stripe across enclosures” is not recommended because then you need four enclosures, instead of two.

## Considerations for volumes for a VVR configuration

For a configuration using Veritas Volume Replicator, either a disaster recovery configuration on a secondary site or a Replicated Data Cluster, note the following:

- VVR does not support the following types of volumes:
  - SFW (software) RAID 5 volumes
  - Volumes with the Dirty Region Log (DRL)
  - Data Change Object (DCO)
  - Volumes with commas in the names
- A configuration with VVR requires a Storage Replicator Log (SRL) volume for each disk group that contains volumes that are replicated. You can create the SRL volume when configuring the other volumes for the application or you can create it later when you set up replication. If you create it later, ensure that you allow sufficient disk space for this volume. For more about VVR planning, see the *Veritas Volume Replicator, Administrator's Guide*.

- Do not assign a drive letter to the Storage Replicator Log volume. This will limit access to that volume and avoid potential data corruption.
- In a disaster recovery configuration, Symantec recommends that for replication considerations, you create a separate volume for tempdb, for example, INST1\_TEMPDB, within the system database disk group. When you later configure replication for disaster recovery, you replicate that disk group but exclude the tempdb volume from the replication. It would waste bandwidth to replicate tempdb because the data is transitory and is not needed for DR site recovery. You can create the volume now and later, after the SQL installation is complete and before configuring replication, move tempdb to the volume. See [“Moving the tempdb database if using VVR for disaster recovery”](#) on page 162.

## Considerations for disk groups and volumes for multiple instances

For an Active-Active configuration or other cases where you are setting up multiple SQL instances in the cluster, you create a separate set of cluster disk groups and volumes for each instance.

For example, if you have a Billing instance and a Payroll instance, you could create the following disk groups and volumes.

For the Billing instance, create the following:

BILLING_DG	a cluster disk group for the volumes related to the Billing instance
BILLING_DATA_FILES	volume for the SQL Server system data files
BILLING_REGREP_VOL	volume for the list of registry keys replicated among cluster nodes for the Billing instance
BILLING_DB1_VOL	volume for the user database files
BILLING_DB1_LOG	volume for the user database log files

For the Payroll Instance, create the following:

PAYROLL_DG	a cluster disk group for the volumes related to the Payroll instance
PAYROLL_DATA_FILES	volume for the SQL Server system data files
PAYROLL_REGREP_VOL	volume for the list of registry keys replicated among cluster nodes for the Payroll instance

PAYROLL_DB1_VOL	volume for the user database files
PAYROLL_DB1_LOG	volume for the user database log files

You can choose either of the following:

- Set up disk groups and volumes for all instances at one time.
- Set up disk groups and volumes for the current instance only and complete all configuration steps for this instance. Then return to this step for the next instance.

## Sample disk group and volume configuration

For an SFW HA solution, you first create a cluster disk group (INST1\_DG) on shared disks and then create the following volumes:

- INST1\_DATA\_FILES contains the SQL Server system data files (including the master, model, msdb, and tempdb databases)
- INST1\_REGREP\_VOL contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the SQL service. Create a 100 MB volume for this purpose.
- INST1\_REPLOG contains the VVR Storage Replicator Log.  
This is required only for a configuration that uses VVR replication, either a Replicated Data Cluster or a disaster recovery configuration using VVR. You can create this volume later while setting up replication.

You may want to place user database files in a separate cluster disk group from the system database files, for example, by creating INST1\_SHARED\_DG for system files and INST1\_USER\_DG for user database files. As a best practice, create a separate disk group and volumes for SQL Server user-defined database and files.

The following disk group and volumes may be created now or later in the configuration process:

- INST1\_DB1\_DG is the disk group for the SQL Server user-defined database and files
- INST1\_DB1\_VOL contains the user database files
- INST1\_DB1\_LOG contains the user database log files
- INST1\_DB1\_REPLOG contains the VVR Storage Replicator Log (required only for a configuration using VVR replication).

This configuration is a simple example. The recommended practice for disk groups and volume layout is dependent on your environment.

## MSDTC sample disk group and volume configuration

For an MSDTC configuration, you will first need to create a cluster disk group (MSDTC\_DG) on shared disks and then create the following volumes:

MSDTC_LOG	contains the MSDTC log files
MSDTC_REGREP	contains the list of registry keys that must be replicated among cluster systems for the MSDTC service group
	Create a 100 MB volume for this purpose.

## Viewing the available disk storage

Before creating disk groups and volumes you may want to view available disk storage.

### To view the available disk storage

- 1 Open the VEA console by clicking **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Veritas Enterprise Administrator** and select a profile if prompted.
- 2 Click **Connect to a Host or Domain**.
- 3 In the Connect dialog box select the host name from the pull-down menu and click **Connect**.  
To connect to the local system, select **localhost**. Provide the user name, password, and domain if prompted.
- 4 In the VEA configuration tree, expand **hostname > StorageAgent** and then click **Disks**.  
The internal names for the disks that the current system can access for available storage are displayed, with names Harddisk1, Harddisk2, etc. The list includes both disks internal to the local system and any external storage that is available.

## Creating a cluster disk group

Use the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) to create a cluster disk group on the first node where the SQL instance is being installed. Repeat the procedure if you want to create additional disk groups.

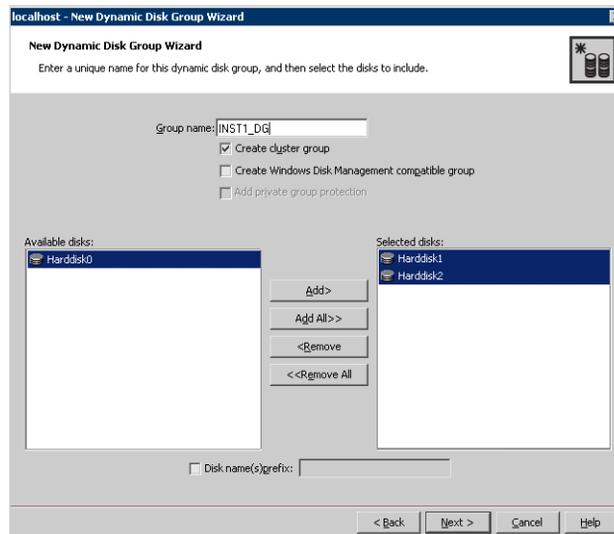
### To create a dynamic (cluster) disk group

---

**Note:** Dynamic disks belonging to a Microsoft Disk Management Disk Group do not support cluster disk groups.

---

- 1 Open the VEA console by clicking **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Veritas Enterprise Administrator** (or launch the VEA from the Solutions Configuration Center) and select a profile if prompted.
- 2 Click **Connect to a Host or Domain**.
- 3 In the Connect dialog box, select the host name from the pull-down menu and click **Connect**.  
To connect to the local system, select **localhost**. Provide the user name, password, and domain if prompted.
- 4 To start the New Dynamic Disk Group wizard, expand the tree view under the host node, right click the **Disk Groups** icon, and select **New Dynamic Disk Group** from the context menu.
- 5 In the Welcome screen of the New Dynamic Disk Group wizard, click **Next**.
- 6 Provide information about the cluster disk group.



- In the **Group name** field, enter a name for the disk group (for example, INST1\_DG).
- Click the checkbox for **Create cluster group**.

- Select the appropriate disks in the **Available disks** list, and use the **Add** button to move them to the **Selected disks** list. Optionally, check the **Disk names prefix** checkbox and enter a disk name prefix to give the disks in the disk group a specific identifier. For example, entering TestGroup as the prefix for a disk group that contains three disks creates TestGroup1, TestGroup2, and TestGroup3 as internal names for the disks in the disk group.

---

**Note:** For Windows Server 2003, Windows Disk Management Compatible Dynamic Disk Group creates a disk group that is compatible with the disk groups created with Windows Disk Management and with earlier versions of Volume Manager for Windows products.

---

- Click **Next**.
- 7 Click **Next** to accept the confirmation screen with the selected disks.
  - 8 Click **Finish** to create the new disk group.

## Creating volumes

This procedure will guide you through the process of creating a volume on a cluster disk group. Repeat the procedure to create additional volumes.

Before you begin, review the following topics if applicable to your environment:

- [“Considerations for converting existing shared storage to cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 119
- [“Considerations for volumes for a VVR configuration”](#) on page 120

---

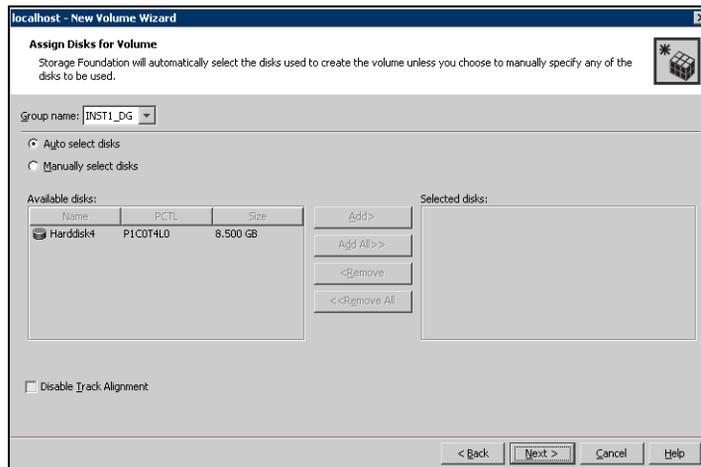
**Note:** When assigning drive letters to volumes, ensure that the drive letters that you assign are available on all nodes.

---

### To create dynamic volumes

- 1 If the VEA console is not already open, click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Veritas Enterprise Administrator** and select a profile if prompted.
- 2 Click **Connect to a Host or Domain**.
- 3 In the Connect dialog box select the host name from the pull-down menu and click **Connect**.  
To connect to the local system, select **localhost**. Provide the user name, password, and domain if prompted.

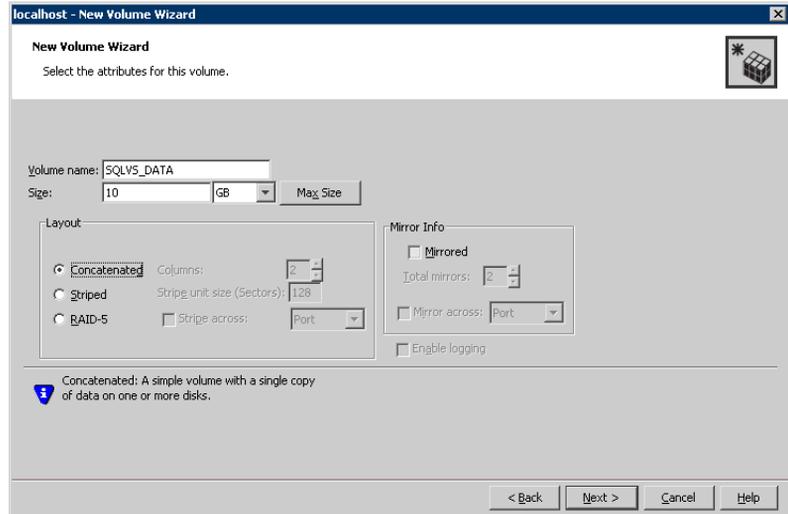
- 4 To start the New Volume wizard, expand the tree view under the host node to display all the disk groups. Right click a disk group and select **New Volume** from the context menu.  
You can right-click the disk group you have just created, for example INST1\_DG.
- 5 At the New Volume wizard opening screen, click **Next**.
- 6 Select the disks for the volume. Make sure the appropriate disk group name appears in the Group name drop-down list.



- Automatic disk selection is the default setting and is recommended for campus clusters. SFW automatically selects the disks based on the following criteria:
  - Their port assignment (disks with two different ports are selected). Note that in the list of available disks, the entry after each disk name starts with the port number. For example, the “P3” in the entry P3C0T2L1 refers to port 3.
  - Amount of available space on the disks. SFW will pick two disks (one from each array) with the most space.
- To manually select the disks, click the **Manually select disks** radio button and use the **Add** and **Remove** buttons to move the appropriate disks to the “Selected disks” list.
- You may also check **Disable Track Alignment** to disable track alignment for the volume. Disabling Track Alignment means that the volume does not store blocks of data in alignment with the boundaries of the physical track of the disk.

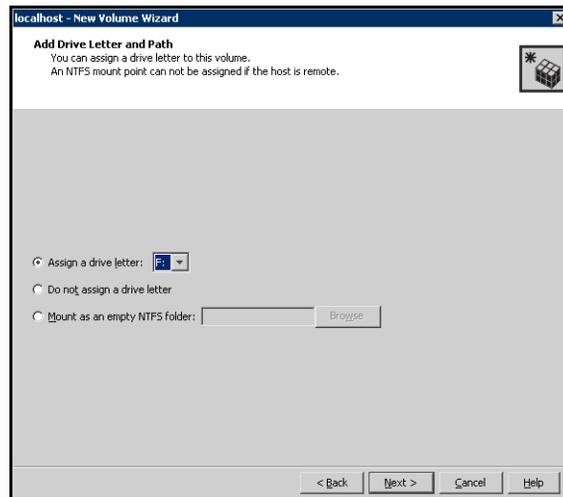
- Click **Next**.

7 Specify the parameters of the volume.



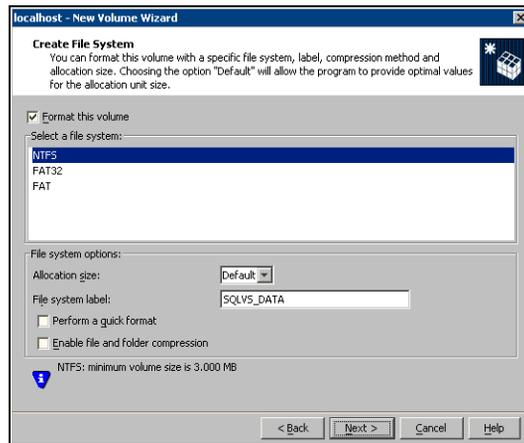
- Enter a volume name. The name is limited to 18 ASCII characters and cannot contain spaces or forward or backward slashes.
- Provide a size for the volume. If you click the **Max Size** button, a size appears in the Size box that represents the maximum possible volume size for that layout in the dynamic disk group.
- Select a layout type.  
 For campus clusters, select either **Concatenated** or **Striped**.
- If you are creating a striped volume, the **Columns** and **Stripe unit size** boxes need to have entries. Defaults are provided.  
 For campus clusters, if you select **Striped**, click the **Stripe across** checkbox and select **Ports** from the drop-down list.
- To select mirrored striped, click both the **Mirrored** checkbox and the **Striped** radio button.  
 For campus clusters, you select the **Mirrored** checkbox for either layout type.
- In the Mirror Info area, select the appropriate mirroring options.  
 For campus clusters, in the **Mirror Info** area, after selecting the **Mirrored** checkbox, click **Mirror across** and select **Enclosures** from the drop-down list.
- Verify that **Enable logging** is not selected.
- Click **Next**.

- 8 Assign a drive letter or mount point to the volume. You must use the same drive letter or mount point on all systems in the cluster. Make sure to verify the availability of the drive letter before assigning it.
  - To assign a drive letter, select **Assign a Drive Letter**, and choose a drive letter.
  - To mount the volume as a folder, select **Mount as an empty NTFS folder**, and click **Browse** to locate an empty folder on the shared disk.
  - If creating a Replicator Log volume for Veritas Volume Replicator, select **Do not assign a drive letter**.



- 9 Click **Next**.

10 Create an NTFS file system.



- Make sure the **Format this volume** checkbox is checked and click **NTFS**.
- For a VVR configuration, for the Replicator Log volume only, clear the **Format this volume** check box.
- Select an allocation size or accept the default.
- The file system label is optional. SFW makes the volume name the file system label.
- Select **Perform a quick format** if you want to save time.
- Select **Enable file and folder compression** to save disk space. Note that compression consumes system resources and performs encryption and decryption, which may result in reduced system performance.
- Click **Next**.

11 Click **Finish** to create the new volume.

12 Repeat these steps to create additional volumes.

Create the cluster disk group and volumes on the first node of the cluster only.

## About managing disk groups and volumes

During the process of setting up an SFW environment, refer to these general procedures for managing disk groups and volumes:

- When a disk group is initially created, it is imported on the node where it is created.
- A disk group can be imported on only one node at a time.
- To move a disk group from one node to another, unmount the volumes in the disk group, deport the disk group from its current node, import it to a new node and mount the volumes.

### Importing a disk group and mounting a volume

Use the VEA Console to import a disk group and mount a volume.

#### To import a disk group

- 1 From the VEA Console, right-click a disk name in a disk group or the group name in the Groups tab or tree view.
- 2 From the menu, click **Import Dynamic Disk Group**.

#### To mount a volume

- 1 If the disk group is not imported, import it.
- 2 To verify if a disk group is imported, from the VEA Console, click the Disks tab and check if the status is imported.
- 3 Right-click the volume, click **File System**, and click **Change Drive Letter and Path**.
- 4 Select one of the following options in the Drive Letter and Paths dialog box depending on whether you want to assign a drive letter to the volume or mount it as a folder.
  - To assign a drive letter  
Select **Assign a Drive Letter**, and select a drive letter.
  - To mount the volume as a folder  
Select **Mount as an empty NTFS folder**, and click **Browse** to locate an empty folder on the shared disk.
- 5 Click **OK**.

### Unmounting a volume and deporting a disk group

Use the VEA Console to unmount a volume and deport a disk group.

### To unmount a volume and deport the dynamic disk group

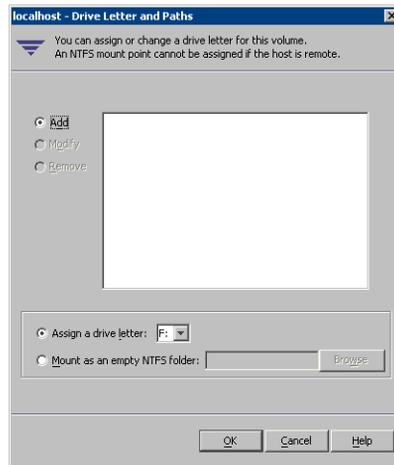
- 1 From the VEA tree view, right-click the volume, click **File System**, and click **Change Drive Letter and Path**.
- 2 In the Drive Letter and Paths dialog box, click **Remove**. Click **OK** to continue.
- 3 Click **Yes** to confirm.
- 4 From the VEA tree view, right-click the disk group, and click **Deport Dynamic Disk Group**.
- 5 Click **Yes**.

## Adding drive letters to mount the volumes

Occasionally, when a disk group is imported a drive letter may not be associated with an existing volume. If this occurs, use the VEA console to add a drive letter and mount the volume so that it can be seen by the operating system. You can also mount the volume as a folder. Verify that all volumes are mounted.

### To add a drive letter or path to a volume

- 1 Navigate to the **Volumes** folder.
- 2 Right-click the volume, click **File System** and click **Change Drive Letter and Path**.



- 3 In the Drive Letter and Paths dialog box, click **Add**.
- 4 Select one of the following options depending on whether you want to assign a drive letter to the volume or mount it as a folder.

- *To assign a drive letter*  
Select the **Assign a Drive Letter** option and select a drive letter from the drop-down list.
- *To mount the volume as a folder*  
Select the **Mount as an empty NTFS folder** option and click **Browse** to locate an empty folder on the shared disk.

---

**Note:** Assign the same drive letter or mount path that was assigned when the volume was created.

---

- 5 Click **OK**.

## Deporting the cluster disk group

Before installing SQL on additional nodes you must move ownership of the cluster disk group from the first node to an additional node. To move ownership, you use the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) to deport the clustered cluster disk group from the current node (SYSTEM1) and then import it to the desired node (SYSTEM2).

### To deport the cluster disk group

- 1 Stop all processes accessing the volumes in the cluster disk group.
- 2 Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Enterprise Administrator** and if prompted, select a profile.
- 3 Click **Connect to a Host or Domain** and in the Connect dialog box, specify the host name and click **Connect**.
- 4 In the tree view, expand the system name where the disk group is current imported, expand **Storage Agent**, and expand **Disk Groups**.
- 5 In the tree view, right-click the cluster disk group to be deported (for example, INST1\_DG) and select **Deport Dynamic Disk Group**.
- 6 Click **Yes** to deport the dynamic cluster disk group.

# Configuring the cluster

The VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard (VCW) sets up the cluster infrastructure, including LLT and GAB, and configures Symantec Product Authentication Service in the cluster. The wizard also provides the option to configure the ClusterService group, which can contain resources for Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode) also referred to as Web Console, notification, and global clusters.

Complete the following tasks before creating a cluster:

- Verify that each node uses static IP addresses and that name resolution is configured for each node.
- Verify that you have the required privileges.  
See “[Reviewing the requirements](#)” on page 72.

If you are setting up a cluster with multiple instances of SQL, plan to add all nodes for all instances to the cluster the first time that you run the wizard. If you do that, you do not need to run the wizard again later to add the nodes.

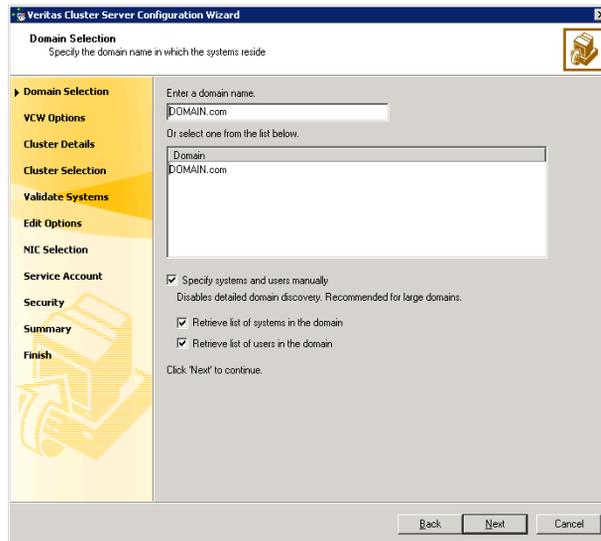
If you are setting up a Replicated Data Cluster configuration, add only the systems in the primary zone (zone 0) to the cluster, at this time.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for complete details on VCS, including instructions on adding cluster nodes or removing or modifying cluster configurations.

## To configure a VCS cluster

- 1 Start the VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard.  
Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > Cluster Configuration Wizard**.
- 2 Read the information on the Welcome panel and click **Next**.
- 3 On the Configuration Options panel, click **Cluster Operations** and click **Next**.

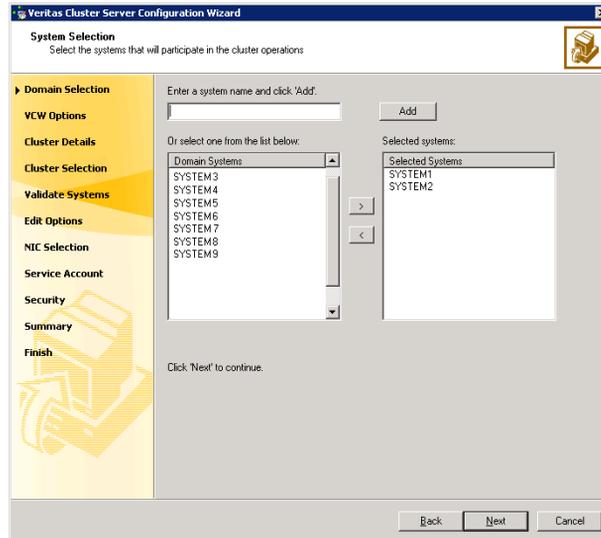
- 4 On the Domain Selection panel, select or type the name of the domain in which the cluster resides and select the discovery options.



Do one of the following:

- To discover information about all systems and users in the domain:
    - Clear the **Specify systems and users manually** check box.
    - Click **Next**.Proceed to [step 8](#) on page 135.
  - To specify systems and user names manually (recommended for large domains):
    - Check the **Specify systems and users manually** check box. Additionally, you may instruct the wizard to retrieve a list of systems and users in the domain by selecting appropriate check boxes.
    - Click **Next**.  
If you chose to retrieve the list of systems, proceed to [step 6](#) on page 135. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.
- 5 On the System Selection panel, type the name of each system to be added, click **Add**, and then click **Next**.  
Do not specify systems that are part of another cluster.  
Proceed to [step 8](#) on page 135.

- 6 On the System Selection panel, specify the systems for the cluster and then click **Next**. Do not select systems that are part of another cluster.



Enter the name of the system and click **Add** to add the system to the Selected Systems list, or click to select the system in the Domain Systems list and then click the > (right-arrow) button.

- 7 The System Report panel displays the validation status, whether *Accepted* or *Rejected*, of all the systems you specified earlier. Review the status and then click **Next**.

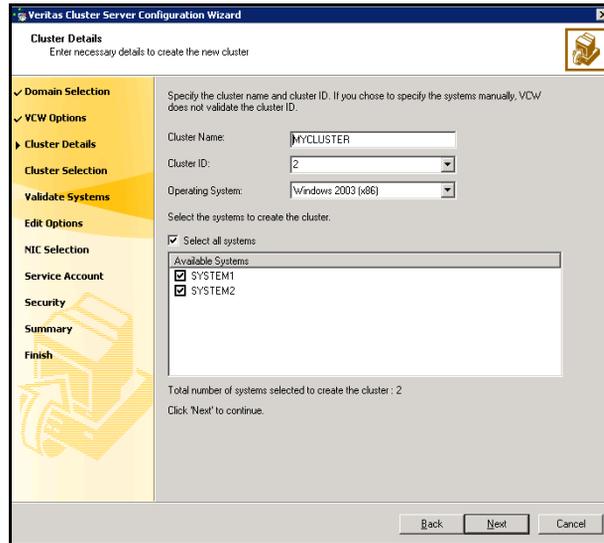
A system can be rejected for any of the following reasons:

- System is not pingable.
- WMI access is disabled on the system.
- Wizard is unable to retrieve the system architecture or operating system.
- VCS is either not installed on the system or the version of VCS is different from what is installed on the system on which you are running the wizard.

Click on a system name to see the validation details. If you wish to include a rejected system, rectify the error based on the reason for rejection and then run the wizard again.

- 8 On the Cluster Configuration Options panel, click **Create New Cluster** and click **Next**.

- 9 On the Cluster Details panel, specify the details for the cluster and then click **Next**.



**Cluster Name** Type a name for the new cluster. Symantec recommends a maximum length of 32 characters for the cluster name.

**Cluster ID** Select a cluster ID from the suggested cluster IDs in the drop-down list or type a unique ID for the cluster. The cluster ID can be any number from 0 to 255.

**Caution:** If you chose to specify systems and users manually in [step 4](#) or if you share a private network between more than one domain, make sure that the cluster ID is unique.

**Operating System** From the drop-down list select the operating system. The Available Systems box then displays all the systems that are running the specified operating system. All the systems in the cluster must have the same operating system and architecture. You cannot configure a 32-bit and a 64-bit system in the same cluster.

**Available Systems** Select the systems that you wish to configure in the cluster. Check the **Select all systems** check box to select all the systems simultaneously.

The wizard discovers the network interface cards (NICs) on the selected systems. For single-node clusters with the required number of NICs, the wizard prompts you to configure a private link heartbeat. In the dialog box, click **Yes** to configure a private link heartbeat.

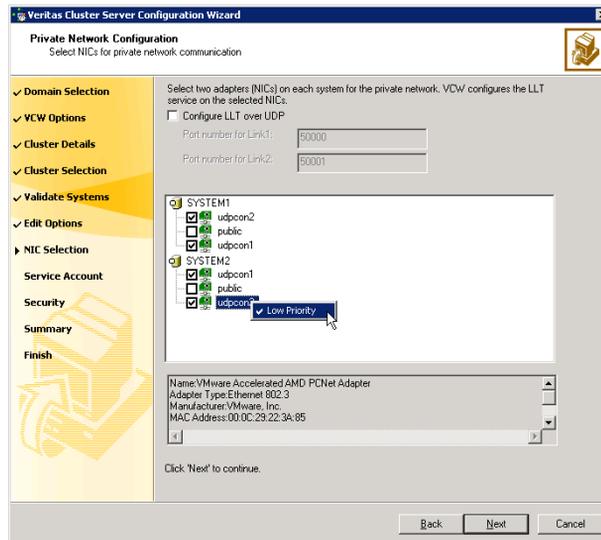
**10** The wizard validates the selected systems for cluster membership. After the systems are validated, click **Next**.

If a system is not validated, review the message associated with the failure and restart the wizard after rectifying the problem.

If you chose to configure a private link heartbeat in the earlier step, proceed to the next step. Otherwise, proceed to [step 12](#) on page 139.

**11** On the Private Network Configuration panel, configure the VCS private network and then click **Next**. You can configure the VCS private network either over the ethernet or over the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) layer. Do one of the following:

- To configure the VCS private network over the ethernet, complete the following steps:



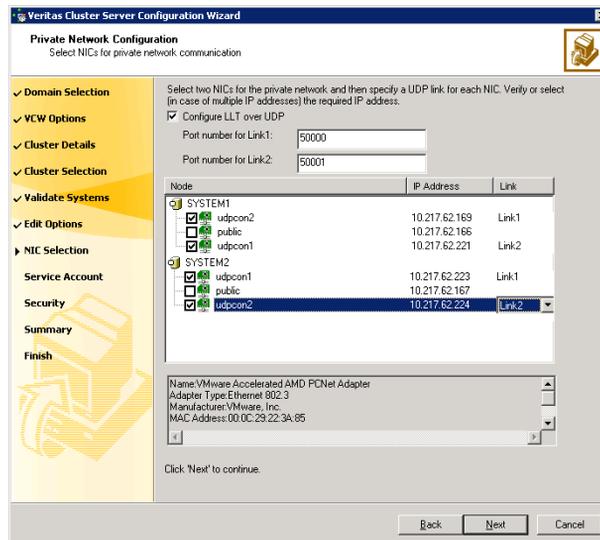
- Select the check boxes next to the two NICs to be assigned to the private network.

Symantec recommends reserving two NICs exclusively for the private network. However, you could lower the priority of one NIC and use the low-priority NIC for both public and private communication.

- If you have only two NICs on a selected system, it is recommended that you lower the priority of at least one NIC that will be used for private as well as public network communication.  
To lower the priority of a NIC, right-click the NIC and select **Low Priority** from the pop-up menu.
- If your configuration contains teamed NICs, the wizard groups them as "NIC Group #N" where "N" is a number assigned to the teamed NIC. A teamed NIC is a logical NIC, formed by grouping several physical NICs together. All NICs in a team have an identical MAC address. Symantec recommends that you do not select teamed NICs for the private network.

The wizard configures the LLT service (over ethernet) on the selected network adapters.

- To configure the VCS private network over the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) layer, complete the following steps:



- Check the **Configure LLT over UDP** check box.
- Specify a unique UDP port in the **Port number for Link1** and **Port number for Link2** fields. You can use ports in the range 49152 to

65535. The default ports numbers are 50000 and 50001 respectively.

- Select the check boxes next to the two NICs to be assigned to the private network. Symantec recommends reserving two NICs exclusively for the VCS private network.
- For each selected NIC, verify the displayed IP address. If a selected NIC has multiple IP addresses assigned, double-click the field and choose the desired IP address from the drop-down list. Each IP address can be in a different subnet.

The IP address is used for the VCS private communication over the specified UDP port.

- For each selected NIC, double-click the respective field in the Link column and choose a link from the drop-down list. Specify a different link (Link1 or Link2) for each NIC. Each link is associated with a UDP port that you specified earlier.

The wizard configures the LLT service (over UDP) on the selected network adapters. The specified UDP ports will be used for the private network communication.

- 12 On the VCS Helper Service User Account panel, specify a domain user account for the VCS Helper service. The VCS high availability engine (HAD), which runs in the context of the local system built-in account, uses the VCS Helper service user context to access the network.

This account does not require Domain Administrator privileges.

The screenshot shows the 'Veritas Cluster Server Configuration Wizard' window, specifically the 'VCS Helper Service User Account' step. The title bar reads 'Veritas Cluster Server Configuration Wizard'. Below the title bar, the main heading is 'VCS Helper Service User Account' with the subtitle 'Specify a user account for the VCS Helper service'. On the left side, there is a vertical navigation pane with a yellow background and a stack of books icon at the bottom. The navigation items are: 'Domain Selection' (checked), 'VCW Options' (checked), 'Cluster Details' (checked), 'Cluster Selection' (checked), 'Validate Systems' (checked), 'Edit Options' (checked), 'NIC Selection' (checked), 'Service Account' (expanded), 'Security', 'Summary', and 'Finish'. The main content area on the right contains the following text: 'Specify a user account in the domain 'vcstom.com' for the VCS Helper service. The service will run in the context of the specified user on all nodes in the cluster.' Below this text are two radio button options: 'Existing User' (selected) and 'New user'. Under 'Existing User', there is a 'Specify User:' label and a dropdown menu showing 'UserA'. Under 'New user', there is a 'Create New User:' label and an empty text input field. At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel'. The 'Next' button is highlighted.

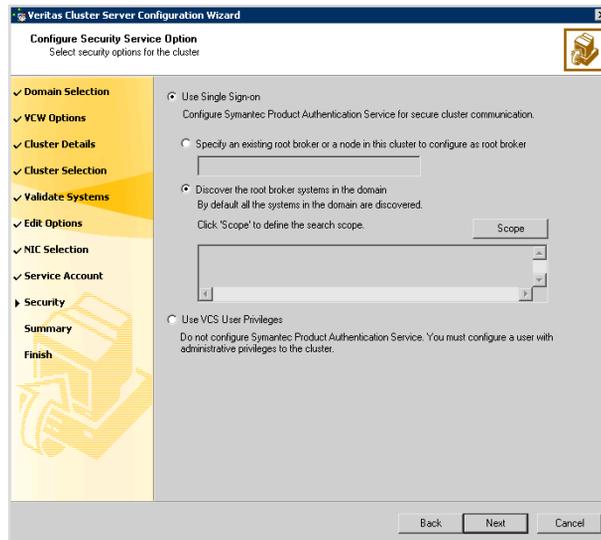
Specify a domain user as follows:

- To specify an existing user, do one of the following:
  - Click **Existing user** and select a user name from the drop-down list
  - If you chose not to retrieve the list of users in [step 4](#) on page 134, type the user name in the **Specify User** field, and then click **Next**.
- To specify a new user, click **New user** and type a valid user name in the Create New User field, and then click **Next**.  
 Do not append the domain name to the user name; do not type the user name as Domain\user or user@domain.
- In the Password dialog box, type the password for the specified user and click **OK**, and then click **Next**.

**13** On the Configure Security Service Option panel, specify the security options for the cluster and then click **Next**.

Do one of the following:

- To use the single sign-on feature, complete the following steps:



- Click **Use Single Sign-on**. In this mode, the Symantec Product Authentication Service is used to secure communication between cluster nodes and clients, including the Java console, by using digital certificates for authentication and SSL to encrypt communication over the public network. VCS uses SSL encryption and platform-based authentication. The VCS high availability engine (HAD) and Veritas Command Server run in secure mode.

For more information about secure communications in a cluster, see the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Quick Start Guide for Symantec Product Authentication Service*.

- If you know the name of the system that will serve as the root broker, click **Specify an existing root broker or a node in this cluster to configure as root broker**, type the system name, and then click **Next**.

If you specify a cluster node, the wizard configures the node as the root broker and other nodes as authentication brokers.

Authentication brokers reside one level below the root broker and serve as intermediate registration and certification authorities. These brokers can authenticate clients, such as users or services, but cannot authenticate other brokers. Authentication brokers have certificates signed by the root.

If you specify a system outside of the cluster, make sure that the system is configured as a root broker; the wizard then configures all nodes in the cluster as authentication brokers.

- If you want to search the system that will serve as root broker, click **Discover the root broker systems in the domain** and click **Next**. The wizard will discover root brokers in the entire domain, by default.
- If you want to define a search criteria, click **Scope**. In the Scope of Discovery dialog box, click **Entire Domain** to search across the domain, or click **Specify Scope** and select the Organization Unit from the Available Organizational Units list, to limit the search to the specified organization unit. Use the Filter Criteria options to search systems matching a certain condition.

For example, to search for systems managed by a user *Administrator*, select **Managed by** from the first drop-down list, **is (exactly)** from the second drop-down list, type the user name **Administrator** in the adjacent field, click **Add**, and then click **OK**. To search for all Windows Server 2003 systems, select **Operating System** from the first drop-down list, **is (exactly)** from the second drop-down list, type **\*2003\*** in the adjacent field, click **Add** and then click **OK**.

Table 5-2 contains some more examples of search criteria.

**Table 5-2** Search criteria examples

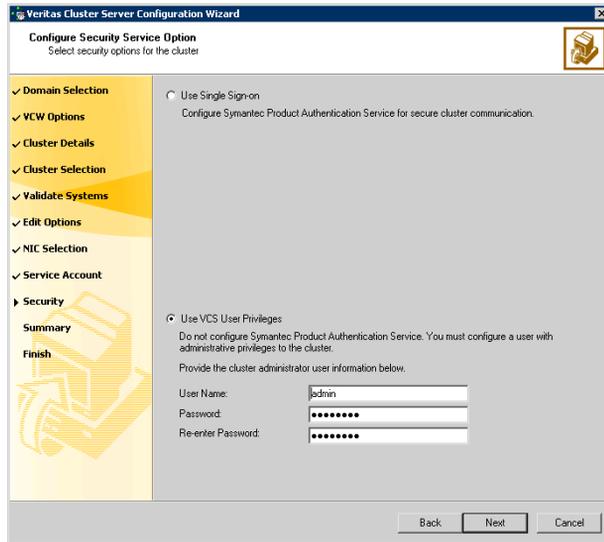
1st drop-down list value	2nd drop-down list value	Adjacent field entry	Search result
Name	is (exactly)	*system	Displays all systems with names that end with <i>system</i> .
Name	is (exactly)	*vcsnode*	Displays all systems with names that contain <i>vcsnode</i> .
Operating System	is (exactly)	*2003*	Displays all Windows Server 2003 systems.
Operating System	is (exactly)	*Enterprise*	Displays all Windows Server Enterprise Edition systems.
Operating System Version	is (exactly)	5.*	Displays all systems whose operating system version is 5.x, where x could be 0, 1, 2, etc.

You can add multiple search criterion; the wizard will search for systems that match all the conditions specified.

- Click **Next**. The wizard discovers and displays a list of all the root brokers. Click to select a system that will serve as the root broker and then click **Next**.

If the root broker is a cluster node, the wizard configures the other cluster nodes as authentication brokers. If the root broker is outside the cluster, the wizard configures all the cluster nodes as authentication brokers.

- To use a VCS user privilege, complete the following steps:



- Click **Use VCS User Privileges** and then type a user name and password. The wizard configures this user as a VCS cluster administrator. In this mode, communication between cluster nodes and clients, including Java console, occurs using the encrypted VCS cluster administrator credentials. The wizard uses the VCS`Encrypt` utility to encrypt the user password. The default user name for the VCS administrator is *admin* and the password is *password*. Both are case-sensitive. You can accept the default user name and password for the VCS administrator account or type a new name and password. Symantec recommends that you specify a new user name and password. After the cluster is configured, you can use this account to log on to VCS using Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode) or Web Console, when VCS is not running in secure mode.
- Click **Next**.

**14** Review the summary information on the Summary panel, and click **Configure**.

The wizard configures the VCS private network. If the selected systems have LLT or GAB configuration files, the wizard displays an informational dialog box before overwriting the files. In the dialog box, click **OK** to overwrite the files. Otherwise, click **Cancel**, exit the wizard, move the existing files to a different location, and rerun the wizard.

The wizard starts running commands to configure VCS services. If an operation fails, click **View configuration log file** to see the log.

- 15 On the Completing Cluster Configuration panel, click **Next** to configure the ClusterService service group; this group is required to set up components for the Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode) or Web Console, notification, and for global clusters.

To configure the ClusterService group later, click **Finish**.

At this stage, the wizard has collected the information required to set up the cluster configuration. After the wizard completes its operations, with or without the ClusterService group components, the cluster is ready to host application service groups. The wizard also starts the VCS engine (HAD) and the Veritas Command Server at this stage.

---

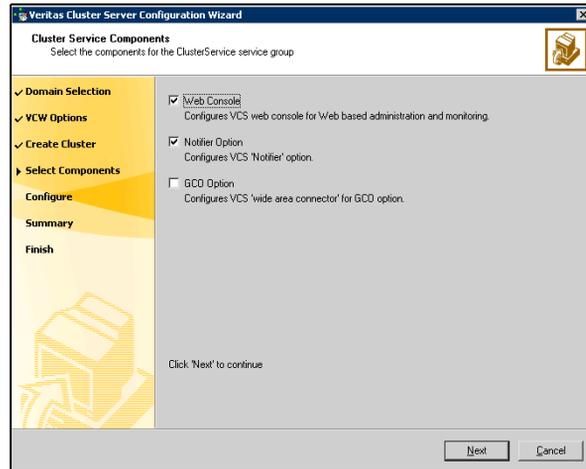
**Note:** After configuring the cluster you must not change the names of the nodes that are part of the cluster. If you wish to change a node name, run this wizard to remove the node from the cluster, rename the system, and then run this wizard again to add that system to the cluster.

---

You are not required to configure the Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode) or Web Console, for this HA environment. Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for complete details on VCS Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode), and the Notification resource.

The GCO Option applies only if you are configuring a Disaster Recovery environment and are not using the Disaster Recovery wizard. The Disaster Recovery chapters discuss how to use the Disaster Recovery wizard to configure the GCO option.

- 16 On the Cluster Service Components panel, select the components to be configured in the ClusterService service group and click **Next**.



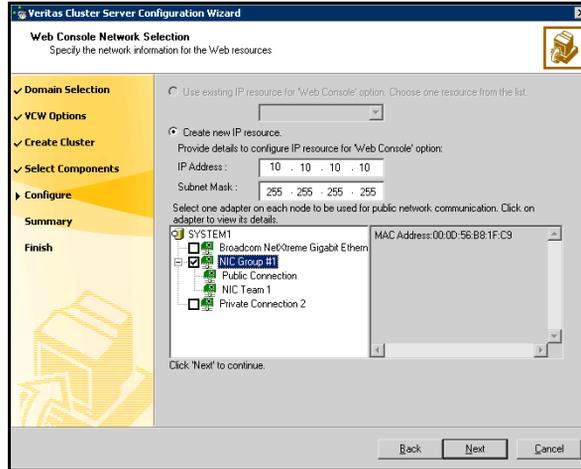
- Check the **Web Console** checkbox to configure the Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode), also referred to as the Web Console. See [“Configuring Web console”](#) on page 145.
- Check the **Notifier Option** checkbox to configure notification of important events to designated recipients. See [“Configuring notification”](#) on page 146.

## Configuring Web console

This section describes steps to configure the VCS Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode), also referred to as the Web Console.

### To configure the Web console

- 1 On the Web Console Network Selection panel, specify the network information for the Web Console resources and click **Next**.



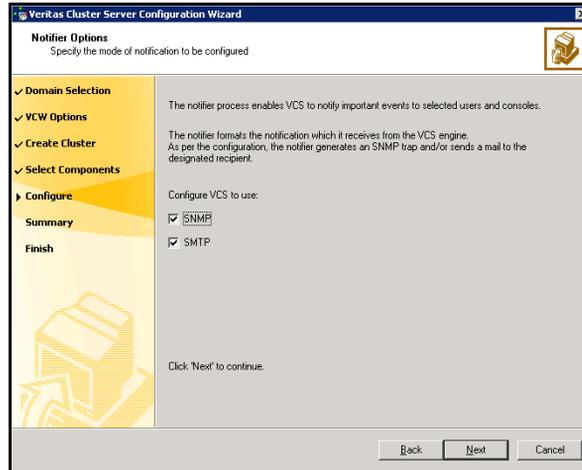
- If the cluster has a ClusterService service group configured, you can use the IP address configured in the service group or configure a new IP address for the Web console.
  - If you choose to configure a new IP address, type the IP address and associated subnet mask.
  - Select a network adapter for each node in the cluster. Note that the wizard lists the public network adapters along with the adapters that were assigned a low priority.
- 2 Review the summary information and choose whether you want to bring the Web Console resources online when VCS is started, and click **Configure**.
  - 3 If you chose to configure a Notifier resource, proceed to: [“Configuring notification”](#) on page 146. Otherwise, click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

## Configuring notification

This section describes steps to configure notification.

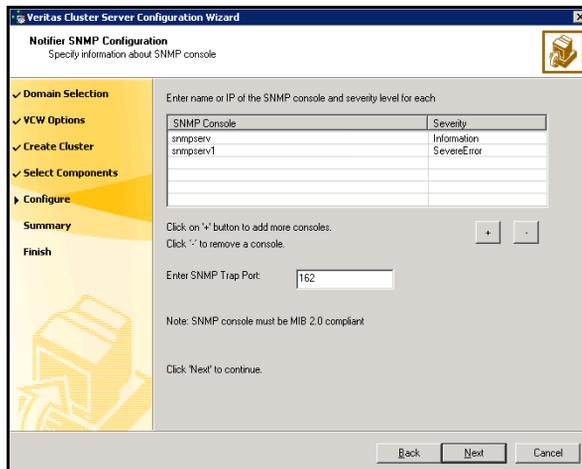
### To configure notification

- 1 On the Notifier Options panel, specify the mode of notification to be configured and click **Next**.

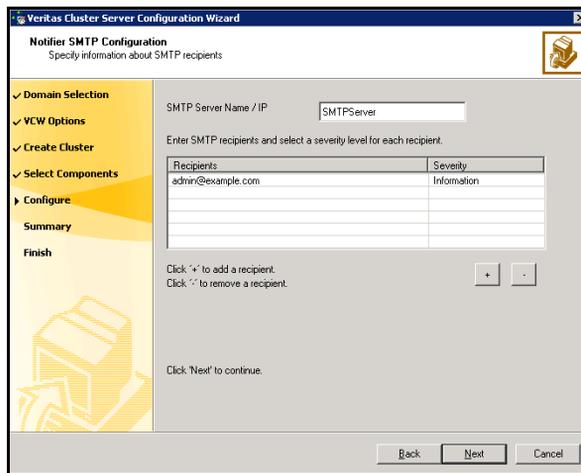


You can configure VCS to generate SNMP (V2) traps on a designated server and send emails to designated recipients in response to certain events.

- 2 If you chose to configure SNMP, specify information about the SNMP console and click **Next**.

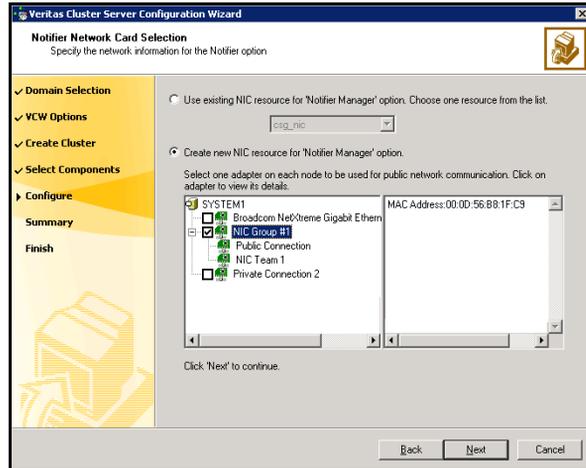


- Click a field in the SNMP Console column and type the name or IP address of the console. The specified SNMP console must be MIB 2.0 compliant.
  - Click the corresponding field in the Severity column and select a severity level for the console.
  - Click '+' to add a field; click '-' to remove a field.
  - Enter an SNMP trap port. The default value is "162".
- 3 If you chose to configure SMTP, specify information about SMTP recipients and click **Next**.



- Type the name of the SMTP server.
- Click a field in the Recipients column and enter a recipient for notification. Enter recipients as admin@example.com.
- Click the corresponding field in the Severity column and select a severity level for the recipient. VCS sends messages of an equal or higher severity to the recipient.
- Click + to add fields; click - to remove a field.

- 4 On the Notifier Network Card Selection panel, specify the network information and click **Next**.



- If the cluster has a ClusterService service group configured, you can use the NIC resource configured in the service group or configure a new NIC resource for notification.
  - If you choose to configure a new NIC resource, select a network adapter for each node in the cluster. The wizard lists the public network adapters along with the adapters that were assigned a low priority.
- 5 Review the summary information and choose whether you want to bring the notification resources online when VCS is started.
  - 6 Click **Configure**.
  - 7 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.



# Installing SQL Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About installing multiple SQL instances](#)
- [Verifying that SQL Server databases and logs are moved to shared storage](#)
- [Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node](#)
- [Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node](#)
- [Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node](#)
- [Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000](#)
- [Creating a SQL Server user-defined database](#)
- [Completing configuration steps in SQL Server](#)

## About installing multiple SQL instances

If you are installing multiple instances of SQL Server on the same system, as in an active-active cluster configuration, some additional requirements apply. The following summary is provided for your review to assist you in planning the installation:

- Symantec recommends that you follow all steps for installing and setting up high availability for the first instance before you begin installing the next instance.
- Assign a unique name and a unique instance ID to each SQL instance. When installing SQL Server on additional nodes for the same instance, ensure that you specify the same instance name and ID.
- Assign a unique port number for each instance.

## Verifying that SQL Server databases and logs are moved to shared storage

This task is applicable only if you are configuring an existing standalone SQL Server in an SFW HA environment.

Verify the location of all SQL Server databases and logs for the existing standalone server. If they are located on local storage, move them from the local drive to the appropriate cluster disk groups and volumes on shared storage to ensure proper failover operations in the cluster.

Complete the following tasks to move the databases.

### To move the database and logs to shared storage

- 1 Stop the SQL Server service.
- 2 Verify that you have backed up your existing data.
- 3 Create the required disk group and volumes for the SQL database and ensure that the dynamic disk group is imported on the node where the original database files are located on the local drives, and mount the volumes.  
See the following topics:
  - “[Creating a cluster disk group](#)” on page 123
  - “[Creating volumes](#)” on page 125
  - “[Deporting the cluster disk group](#)” on page 132
  - “[Importing a disk group and mounting a volume](#)” on page 130
  - “[Adding drive letters to mount the volumes](#)” on page 131
- 4 Move the SQL Server data file and user database locations.

Refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation for instructions.

- 5 Restart SQL Server.

## Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node

Run the Microsoft SQL Server installer to install SQL Server on the first cluster node. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for instructions.

If you are configuring a standalone SQL Server, proceed to installing and configuring SQL on additional nodes.

See “[Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node](#)” on page 157.

Install the SQL program files to a local disk and the SQL data files to the shared storage managed by the cluster disk group. As you progress through the installation, use the following guidelines to create an installation that will function properly in your environment.

---

**Note:** Only the portions of the SQL Server installation procedure relevant to the SFW environment are documented. Refer to the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 documentation for detailed installation information. Also refer to the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 documentation on the use of /PAE and /AWE switches if you are installing multiple instances of SQL and anticipate intensive memory use.

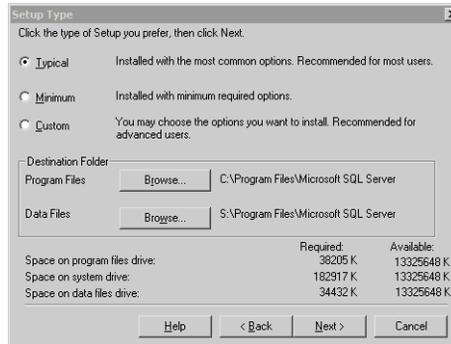
---

### To install Microsoft SQL Server 2000

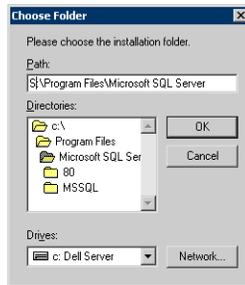
- 1 From the browser menu, select **SQL Server 2000 Components > Install Database Server**. Proceed with the installation steps.
- 2 If you are running Windows Server 2003, click **Continue** at the message that says SQL Server 2000 SP2 and below is not supported by this version of Windows. You will install SQL Server 2000 SP4 after installing SQL Server.
- 3 On the Welcome screen, click **Next**.
- 4 In the Computer Name panel, select **Local Computer** and click **Next**.
- 5 Proceed through the installation to the Installation Definition panel.
- 6 In the Installation Definition panel, choose the **Server and Client Tools** option and click **Next**.
- 7 In the Instance Name panel, enter an instance name (for example INST1), and click **Next**.

Use the same instance name when installing this instance of SQL Server 2000 on failover nodes. If you are installing multiple instances of SQL in the cluster, each must have its own unique instance name.

- 8 In the Setup Type panel, select the type of installation and click **Browse** to specify the destination folder for SQL Server program and data files.

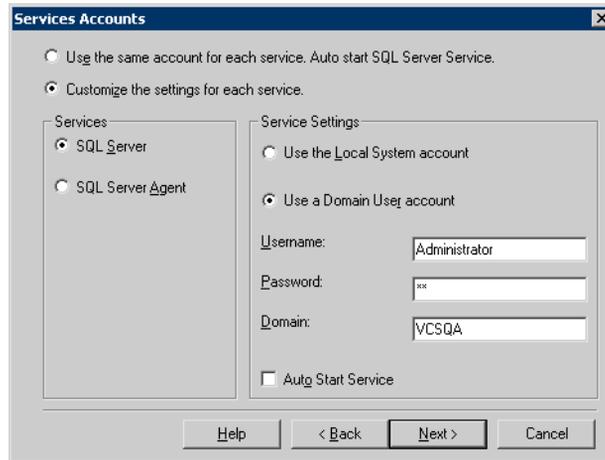


- 9 In the Choose Folder dialog box, make the following selections and click **Next**:



- For Program Files, select a volume on the local disk.
- For Data Files, select the volume created for the SQL Server system data files (INST1\_DATA\_FILES). You can allow the rest of the path (\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server) to remain. You must set the same path on all nodes.

- 10 In the Service Accounts panel, make the following selections and click **Next**:



- Choose the **Customize the settings for each service** option.
  - In the Services box, select the **SQL Server** option.
  - In the Service Settings box, select **Use a Domain User account** and then specify the user name, password, and domain.
  - Clear the **Auto Start Service** option.
  - Repeat these steps for the SQL Server Agent option.
- 11 Follow the wizard instructions to complete the installation.
- 12 When you have completed the initial installation of SQL Server 2000, install SQL Server 2000 SP4.
- 13 Set all SQL 2000 services to manual start.

---

**Warning:** Multiple instances of SQL Server 2000 must be installed in the same order on every node in the cluster.

---

## Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node

Run the Microsoft SQL Server 2005 installer to install SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for instructions.

If you are configuring a standalone SQL Server, proceed to installing and configuring SQL on additional nodes.

See “[Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node](#)” on page 157.

Note the following requirements while installing and configuring SQL Server:

- Ensure that the cluster disk group is imported and the volumes are mounted to the first node for this SQL instance.

See “[About cluster disk groups and volumes](#)” on page 117.

See “[Deporting the cluster disk group](#)” on page 132.

See “[Importing a disk group and mounting a volume](#)” on page 130.

See “[Adding drive letters to mount the volumes](#)” on page 131.

- Before you begin installing SQL Server 2005, verify that Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) is installed and enabled on the system. Otherwise, you will be prompted to install or enable IIS and then restart the installation.

- Install the SQL program files to a local disk and the SQL database files to the shared storage managed by the cluster disk group.

- Use the same instance name and instance ID when you install the instance of SQL Server on failover nodes. If you are installing multiple instances of SQL in the cluster, each instance must have a unique instance name and instance ID on all the nodes.

- While specifying a user name for the SQL Server services account, specify a domain user account.

If SQL Server services are not installed with a domain user account, the SQL service group may fail to come online on the cluster nodes. It may come online only on the node on which SQL Server was installed last. In such a case, you must perform additional steps after configuring the SQL service group.

See Technote <http://support.veritas.com/docs/281828>.

- Apart from the SQL Browser service, make sure that the other SQL Server services are not set to start at the end of the SQL installation. While installing SQL Server on the first node, set the startup type of all the SQL Server services to manual. However, set the startup type of the SQL Server Browser service to automatic. You must do this only for the instance which you have installed.

You can change the services startup type either during the installation or using the SQL Server Configuration Manager after the installation. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for instructions.

## Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node

Run the Microsoft SQL Server installer to install SQL Server on the second or any additional cluster node. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for instructions.

Note the following prerequisites before installing SQL Server on the second or any additional failover nodes for the SQL instance:

- Ensure that the SQL Server services for the SQL instance are stopped on the first node where you installed SQL Server. This allows the installation on the second or additional nodes to manipulate the database files on the shared disks.
- Ensure that the cluster disk group for this SQL instance is deported from the first node and imported on the second or additional node. Ensure that the volumes are mounted and drive letters are assigned on the second or additional node.
  - See [“About cluster disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 117.
  - See [“Deporting the cluster disk group”](#) on page 132.
  - See [“Importing a disk group and mounting a volume”](#) on page 130.
  - See [“Adding drive letters to mount the volumes”](#) on page 131.
- Install SQL Server in the stand-alone installation mode in a non-clustered environment. Also, while installing SQL, ensure that you select all the desired features (for example, Full-Text Search, Analysis Services) that you wish to configure with SFW HA.
- Before installing SQL on the second or additional node, open the SQL Server system data files volume (INST1\_DATA\_FILES) and rename or remove the first node SQL Server system data files. The files will be replaced during the installation of SQL Server on the second or additional nodes.

If you rename the folder that contains the system data files, the files are available as backup files in case problems occur during the second or additional node SQL Server installation.

You can delete the renamed folder and its contents after the installation completes successfully.
- In case of multiple SQL Server instances, ensure that you specify a unique instance name and instance ID for each SQL instance, on all the cluster nodes.
- When done installing SQL Server on all the nodes for that instance, set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name\instance name.
  - See [“Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000”](#) on page 158.

## Setting the internal name of the clustered instance for SQL Server 2000

Use the Query Analyzer to set the internal name of the clustered instance to be the virtual server name.

---

**Note:** Do this procedure after you install and configure SQL Server on the last node for this instance, so that you need to do the procedure only once. Do it from the last node, assuming that it is still connected to the shared volumes.

---

The virtual server name you assign must be unique within the cluster. The virtual server name is used by the SQL Server clients to access the database. You specify the virtual server name again when configuring the VCS SQL service group for this instance.

---

**Warning:** For a disaster recovery configuration, the virtual server name on the secondary site cluster must match the one on the primary site cluster.

---

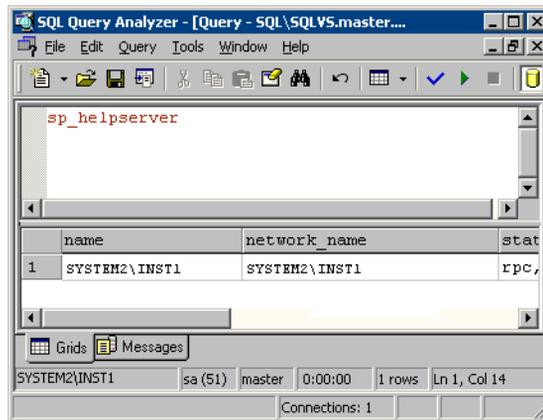
### To set the internal name of the clustered instance

- 1 Click **Start > All Programs > Microsoft SQL Server > Query Analyzer** to start the SQL Query Analyzer.
- 2 In the **Connect to SQL Server** window, provide connection information as follows:



- In **SQL Server**, enter the SQL Server machine name in the format *System\_Name\Instance\_Name*. For example *SYSTEM2\INST1*.
- Select the **Start SQL server if it is stopped** checkbox.
- Enter valid user credentials and click **OK**.

- 3 Find the SQL Server name as follows:



- In the upper pane of the query analyzer, enter the text “sp\_helpserver”
  - Press F5.
  - Make note of the name listed in the lower pane, for example SYSTEM2\INST1. For a named instance, the name will be *System\_Name\Instance\_Name*. For a default instance, the name will be *System\_Name*.
- 4 Delete the contents in the upper pane.
- 5 Disconnect the database as follows:
- In the upper pane, enter the following:  
`“sp_dropserver `System_Name\Instance_Name.’”`  
 where *System\_Name\Instance\_Name* is the name noted in step 3.  
 For example, for named instance:  
`“sp_dropserver `SYSTEM2\INST1.’”`  
 For example, for a default instance:  
`“sp_dropserver `SYSTEM1.’”`
  - Press F5.
- 6 Delete the contents in the upper pane.

- 7 Reconnect the database using the name of the virtual server as follows:
  - In the top pane, enter  
“`sp_addserver 'Virtual_Server_Name\Instance_Name',  
local`”  
For example `'INST1-VS\INST1'`, `local` for a named instance, or  
`'INST1-VS'`, `local` for a default instance.
  - Press F5.

## Creating a SQL Server user-defined database

You can use SFW HA to manage SQL Server user-defined databases. For making the user-defined databases highly available, create the user-defined databases and then configure them in the SQL Server service group. Refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation for instructions on how to create databases.

Refer to the following guidelines before creating and configuring the user-defined databases:

- The user-defined databases must reside on shared disks. If you have not already created volumes for a user-defined SQL Server database and its transaction log, create them first.  
See [“Creating volumes”](#) on page 125.
- Create the SQL Server database for the desired SQL server virtual server instance, and point the database files and transaction log to the new volumes created for them.  
Refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation for instructions.
- After creating the database, you may have additional steps to complete in the SQL Server configuration. Perform the desired steps depending on your configuration plans.  
See [“Completing configuration steps in SQL Server”](#) on page 162.
- If you have already configured the SQL Server service group, run the SQL Server Configuration Wizard again to modify the SQL Server service group. This allows the wizard to add storage agent resources for the new database, to the existing service group.  
You must run the SQL Server Configuration Wizard in the modify mode only if you create user-defined databases after creating the SQL Server service group.  
See [“Modifying a SQL Server service group to add VMDg and MountV resources”](#) on page 181.

## Completing configuration steps in SQL Server

Depending on your configuration, you may have additional steps to complete in SQL Server.

If you plan to implement a disaster recovery configuration using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR), Symantec recommends that you exclude the tempdb database from replication. To do this, you need to first move it to a separate volume within the system database disk group.

See [“Moving the tempdb database if using VVR for disaster recovery”](#) on page 162.

If you are running multiple SQL Server instances, you must assign a different port to each SQL Server instance.

See [“Assigning ports for multiple SQL Server instances”](#) on page 162.

### Moving the tempdb database if using VVR for disaster recovery

If you plan to implement a disaster recovery configuration using VVR, Symantec recommends that you move tempdb to a separate volume within the system database disk group in order to be able to exclude it from replication.

If you have not yet created the volume for tempdb, you can do that now.

See [“Creating volumes”](#) on page 125.

Then, refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation for the instructions on moving the tempdb database.

### Assigning ports for multiple SQL Server instances

If you are running multiple SQL Server instances, you must assign a different port to each named instance. You can assign static or dynamic ports. Refer to the Microsoft Knowledge Base for instructions on how to assign ports.

If you wish to change the port after configuring the SQL service group, you must perform the steps in the following order:

- Bring the SQL service group online or partially online (up to the registry replication resource) on a cluster node.
- On the node on which the SQL service group is online or partially online, change the port assigned to the SQL instance. Refer to the Microsoft SQL Server documentation for instructions.
- Take the SQL service group offline on the node, and then bring it online again. The configuration changes will be replicated to the remaining cluster nodes.

# Configuring SQL Server for failover

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group](#)
- [Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration](#)
- [Configuring an MSDTC Server service group](#)
- [About configuring the MSDTC client for SQL Server](#)
- [About the VCS Application Manager utility](#)
- [Viewing DTC transaction information](#)
- [Modifying a SQL Server service group to add VMDg and MountV resources](#)
- [Determining additional steps needed](#)

## Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group

A VCS SQL Server service group is used to bring a SQL Server instance online on another node if the active node fails. If you have set up multiple cluster nodes, you specify the priority of the failover node while configuring the service group. You use the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard to configure the service group.

Read the following topics:

- [Service group requirements for Active-Active configurations](#)
- [Prerequisites for configuring the service group](#)
- [Creating the SQL Server service group](#)

### Service group requirements for Active-Active configurations

Note the following requirements for Active-Active configurations:

- For an Active-Active configuration, you must create a separate service group for each instance.
- Each service group that you create must have a unique service group name and virtual IP address.
- For an Active-Active configuration, when you specify the priority order of systems, reverse the order for each service group so that the active system and failover system are opposite for each instance. For example, if you have two instances and two systems, you would set the priority order as follows:

INSTANCE 1	Priority order: SYSTEM1 SYSTEM2
INSTANCE2	Priority order: SYSTEM2 SYSTEM1

## Prerequisites for configuring the service group

Complete the following tasks before configuring the service group for a high availability cluster, campus cluster, or a Replicated Data Cluster:

- Verify that you have completed the steps in the high availability, campus cluster, or RDC workflows up through the step of installing SQL Server on all nodes.  
See the following topics as appropriate:
  - [“High availability \(HA\) configuration \(New Server\)”](#) on page 35
  - [“High availability \(HA\) configuration \(Existing Server\)”](#) on page 38
  - [“VCS campus cluster configuration”](#) on page 42
  - [“VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration”](#) on page 45
- Verify that you have VCS Administrator privileges. This user classification is required to create and configure a service group.
- You must be a local Administrator on the node where you run the wizard. If you wish to configure detail monitoring, you must have the permission to log on to the respective SQL instance.
- Verify that the SQL Server instance is installed identically on all nodes that will participate in the service group.
- Verify that the drive containing the SQL Server system data files and registry replication information is mounted on the node on which you are configuring the service group.  
See [“About managing disk groups and volumes”](#) on page 130.
- Assign a unique virtual IP address for the SQL Server instance. You specify this IP address when configuring the service group.
- If you wish to use a script for detail monitoring, for example, to create a table and write data to it, note the location(s) of the script to use. Either locate the script file in shared storage or ensure that the same file exists in the same location on all the cluster nodes.  
A sample script is supplied in the following directory:  
C:\Program Files\Veritas\cluster  
server\bin\SQLServer2005\sample\_script.sql
- If you have configured a Firewall, add the following to the Firewall Exceptions list:
  - Port 14150 or the VCS Command Server service,  
%vcs\_home%\bin\CmdServer.exe.  
Here, %vcs\_home% is the installation directory for VCS, typically  
C:\Program Files\Veritas\Cluster Server.

- Port 14141

For a detailed list of services and ports used by SFW HA, refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions for Windows Installation and Upgrade Guide*.

- Stop the SQL Server service for the SQL instance that you wish to configure the service group.

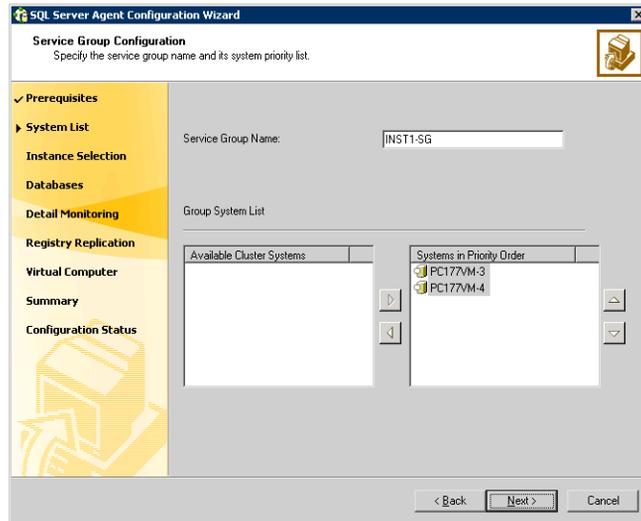
## Creating the SQL Server service group

The VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard enables you to create a SQL Server 2000 or 2005 service group and define the attributes for its resources on all the nodes within the cluster simultaneously.

### To create a SQL Server service group on the cluster

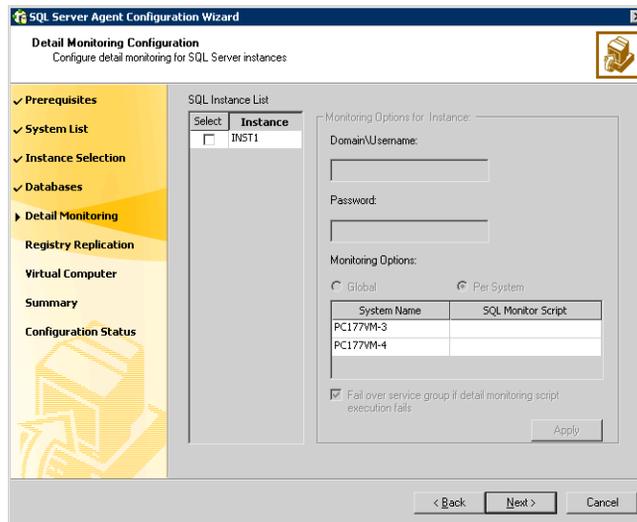
- 1 Ensure that you have stopped the SQL Server service for the instance.
- 2 Start the SQL Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center or click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > SQL Server Configuration Wizard**.
- 3 On the Select Configuration Option panel, choose **MS SQL Server Service Group Configuration** and **Create**, and click **Next**.
- 4 Verify that you have met the prerequisites listed and click **Next**.

- 5 On the Service Group Configuration panel, specify the service group name and system list, as follows:



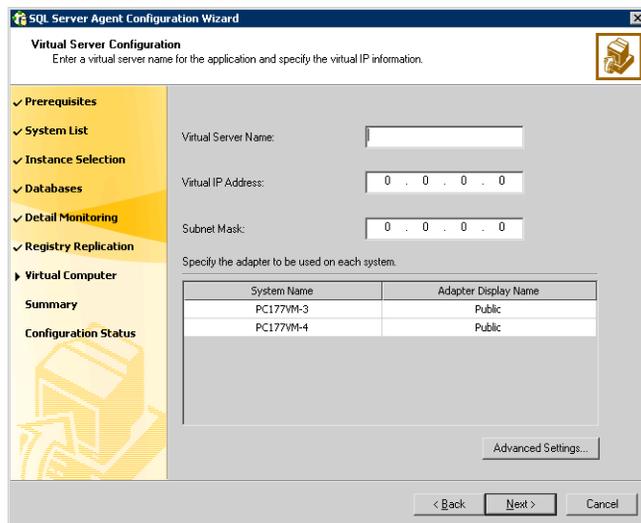
- In the Service Group Name field, specify a name for the SQL Server service group, for example, INST1\_SG. If there are multiple instances, ensure that the name is unique within the cluster.
  - In the Available Cluster Systems box, select the systems on which to configure the service group and click the right-arrow to move the systems to the Systems in Priority Order list.
  - To change the priority of a system in the Systems in Priority Order list, select the system and click the up and down arrow icons. Arrange the systems in priority order as failover targets for the group. The server that needs to come online first must be at the top of the list.  
 For an active/active configuration, ensure that the active and failover systems are set differently for each instance. For example, if the system priority for the first instance is SYSTEM1, then SYSTEM2, the system priority for the second instance should be SYSTEM2, then SYSTEM1.
  - Click **Next**.
- 6 On the SQL Server Instance Selection panel, complete the following steps and then click **Next**:
    - Select the SQL Server instance(s) that you wish to configure in the service group. The wizard displays only those instances that are installed on all the cluster nodes.

- If required, select the other services that you wish to make highly available. These options are available for selection only if the corresponding services are installed.
- 7 The User Databases List panel summarizes the databases on this instance of SQL. Click **Next**.
  - 8 In the Detail Monitoring Configuration panel, optionally enable a monitoring script as follows:



- Select the checkbox for the SQL Server instance for which detail monitoring will be configured. Only the instances selected in [step 6](#) are available for selection.
- Specify the fully qualified user name and password for connecting to SQL Server database. Make sure the specified user has SQL Server log on permissions.
- If the path of the script is same on all nodes, choose the **Global** option, click the **SQL Monitor Script** text box, and specify the path to the script on the first system displayed in the **System Name** list. If the path of the script is different on all nodes, choose the **Per System** option, and specify the path for the script on each node. Make sure the specified path exists on all the systems in the cluster.
- Select the **Fail over service group if detail monitoring script execution fails** checkbox, if not already selected. This will enable the SQL agent to fail over the service group if the detail monitoring script execution fails.

- Click **Apply**.
- 9 If you want to configure detail monitoring for additional instances, repeat step 8 for all the instances for which detail monitoring will be configured.
- 10 Click **Next**.
- 11 On the Registry Replication Path panel, specify the mount path to the registry replication volume (INST1\_REGREP\_VOL) and click **Next**. Symantec recommends that RegRep resources and SQL data be in separate volumes.
- 12 On the Virtual Server Configuration panel, specify the virtual server and network information and then click **Next**.



Complete the following steps:

- Enter the virtual name for the server, for example INST1-VS. Ensure that the virtual server name you enter is unique in the cluster. It is the same as the virtual server name specified when setting the internal name of the clustered instance.
- Enter a unique virtual IP address that is currently not being used on your network, but is in the same subnet as the current node.
- Enter the subnet mask to which the virtual IP address belongs.
- For each system in the cluster, select the public network adapter name. Select the **Adapter Display Name** field to view the adapters associated with a system.

The wizard displays all TCP/IP enabled adapters on a system, including the private network adapters, if they are TCP/IP enabled. Make sure that you select the adapters to be assigned to the public network, and not those assigned to the private network.

- If you require a computer object to be created in the Active Directory (AD), click **Advanced Settings**, check the **Active Directory Update Required** check box, specify the desired Organizational Unit in the domain and then click **OK**. The user account configured for VCS Helper service must have adequate privileges on the specified container to create and update computer accounts.

This sets the Lanman resource attributes ADUpdateRequired and ADCriticalForOnline to true. This allows the Lanman agent to update Active Directory with the SQL virtual server name.

You can type the OU details in the format

**CN=Computers,DC=domainname,DC=com.**

To search for the OU, click the ellipsis button and specify the search criteria in the Windows Find Organizational Units dialog box.

By default, the Lanman resource adds the virtual server name to the default container "Computers."

- 13 In the Service Group Summary panel, review the service group configuration and then click **Next**.

The Resources box lists the configured resources. The wizard assigns unique names to resources based on their respective name rules. Click a resource to view its attributes and their configured values in the Attributes box.

Optionally, if desired, change the names of the resources as follows:

- To edit a resource name, click the resource name or press the **F2** key. Press the **Enter** key after editing each resource name.
- To cancel editing a resource name, press the **Esc** key.

- 14 Click **Yes** when prompted to confirm creating the service group. Messages indicate the status of the commands.

- 15 Complete the SQL Server service group configuration as follows:

- In the **Bring the service group online** check box, if you want to bring the service group online later, clear the check box.

You may want to review the service group configuration in the Cluster Manager (Java Console) before bringing the service group online. You can use the Cluster Manager to bring the service group online later.

- Click **Finish** to exit the wizard or click **Next** to configure another SQL service group or an MSDTC service group.

The wizard marks all the resources in the service group as `CRITICAL`. If desired, use Cluster Manager (Java Console) or the command line to change the state.

If you have created a new SQL Server database, you must modify the SQL Server service group to add VMDg and MountV resources to the service group by running the SQL Server Configuration Wizard.

See “[Modifying a SQL Server service group to add VMDg and MountV resources](#)” on page 181.

## Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration

Failover simulation is an important part of configuration testing.

To verify the configuration of a cluster, either move the online groups, or shut down an active cluster node.

- Use Veritas Cluster Manager (Java Console) to switch all the service groups from one node to another.
- Simulate a local cluster failover by shutting down an active cluster node.

### To switch service groups

- 1 In the Veritas Cluster Manager (Java Console), click the cluster in the configuration tree, click the Service Groups tab, and right-click the service group icon in the view panel.
  - Click **Switch To**, and click the appropriate node from the menu.
  - In the dialog box, click **Yes**. The service group you selected is taken offline on the original node and brought online on the node you selected.

If there is more than one service group, you must repeat this step until all the service groups are switched.
- 2 Verify that the service group is online on the node you selected to switch to in [step 1](#).
- 3 To move all the resources back to the original node, repeat [step 1](#) for each of the service groups.

### To shut down an active cluster node

- 1 Gracefully shut down or restart the cluster node where the service group is online.
- 2 In the Veritas Cluster Manager (Java Console) on another node, connect to the cluster.

- 3 Verify that the service group has failed over successfully, and is online on the next node in the system list.
- 4 If you need to move all the service groups back to the original node:
  - Restart the node you shut down in [step 1](#).
  - Click **Switch To**, and click the appropriate node from the menu.
  - In the dialog box, click **Yes**.  
The service group you selected is taken offline and brought online on the node that you selected.

## Configuring an MSDTC Server service group

MSDTC is a global resource and can be accessed by more than one SQL Server service group. Symantec recommends that you configure only one MSDTC service group in a VCS cluster.

To configure high availability for MSDTC Server, you first use the SQL Server Configuration Wizard to create a service group for the MSDTC Server and then configure the MSDTC client manually.

### Prerequisites for MSDTC configuration

Review the following prerequisites before configuring the MSDTC service group:

- Verify that the MSDTC service is installed on all nodes that will participate in the MSDTC Server service group.
- You must be a Cluster Administrator. This user classification is required to create and configure a service group.
- You must be a local Administrator on the node where you run the wizard.
- Verify that the VCS Database Agent for SQL Server is installed on all cluster nodes.
- Verify that the VCS cluster is configured using the VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard (VCW).
- Verify that the drives for the MSDTC logs and registry replication information are mounted on the node on which you are configuring the service group and unmounted on all other nodes.
- Verify that the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) service is stopped.
- Keep the following information ready with you; the wizard prompts you for these details:

- A unique virtual server name for the MSDTC Server. This is the name that is used by MSDTC clients to connect to the MSDTC Server. The DTC service runs under this name.
- A unique virtual IP address for the MSDTC Server.

## Creating an MSDTC Server service group

Use the SQL Server Configuration Wizard to configure a service group for the MSDTC Server. After configuring the service group, proceed to configuring the MSDTC client.

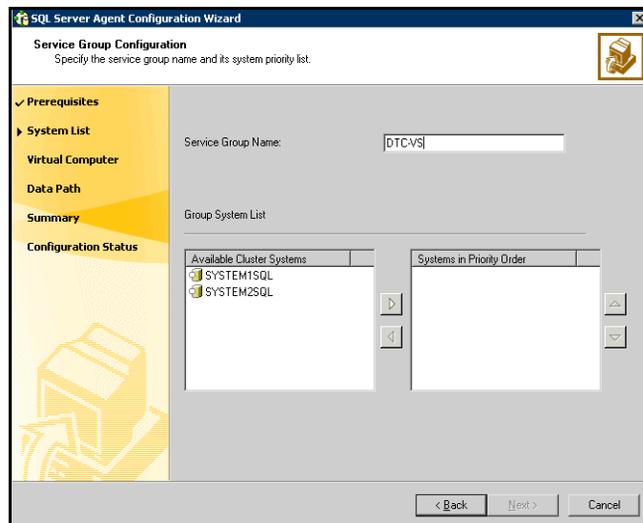
---

**Note:** You can create only one MSDTC Server service group in a cluster.

---

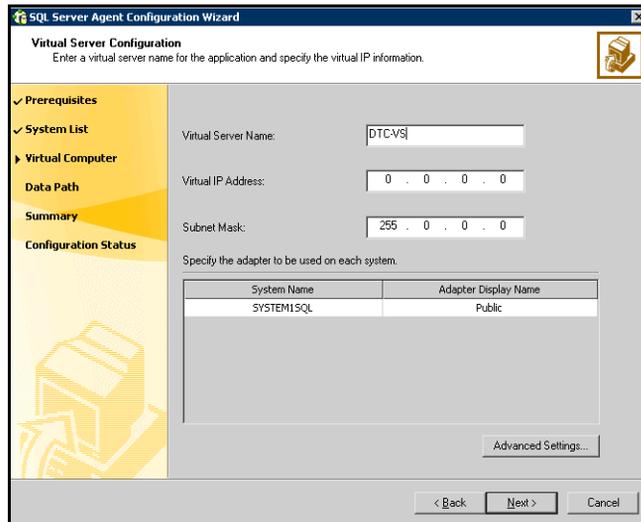
### To configure an MSDTC Server service group

- 1 Start the SQL Server Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center or click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > SQL Server Configuration Wizard**.
- 2 On the SQL Configuration Option panel, click **MSDTC Server - Service Group Configuration**, click **Create** and then click **Next**.
- 3 Review and verify that you have met the prerequisites and then click **Next**.
- 4 On the Service Group Configuration panel, specify the service group name and the system list, as follows:



- Enter a name for MSDTC service group.

- In the Available Cluster Systems box, select the systems on which to configure the service group and click the right-arrow to move the systems to the service group's system list. Make sure you select the systems that are not in the SystemList attribute for an Exchange service group that may be configured in the cluster.
  - To change a system's priority, in the Systems in Priority Order list, select the system and click the up and down arrows. Arrange the systems in priority order as failover targets for the group. The server that needs to come online first must be at the top of the list.
  - Click **Next**.  
If the configuration is in read-only mode, the wizard prompts you before changing it to read-write mode. The wizard starts validating your configuration. Various messages indicate the validation status.
- 5 On the Virtual Server Configuration panel, specify the virtual server and network details and then click **Next**.



Complete the following steps:

- Enter a virtual server name for the node on which the DTC service is running. Ensure that the virtual server name you enter is unique in the cluster. This is the name that is used by MSDTC clients to connect to the MSDTC Server.
- Enter a unique virtual IP address for the MSDTC server.
- Enter the subnet mask to which the virtual IP address belongs.

- For each system in the cluster, select the public network adapter name. Click the **Adapter Display Name** field to view the adapters associated with a system.

The wizard displays all TCP/IP enabled adapters on a system, including the private network adapters, if they are TCP/IP enabled. Make sure that you select the adapters to be assigned to the public network, and not those assigned to the private network.
  - If you require a computer object to be created in the Active Directory (AD), click **Advanced Settings**, check the **Active Directory Update Required** check box, specify the desired Organizational Unit in the domain and then click **OK**. The user account configured for VCS Helper service must have adequate privileges on the specified container to create and update computer accounts.

This sets the Lanman resource attributes ADUpdateRequired and ADCriticalForOnline to true. This allows the Lanman agent to update Active Directory with the SQL virtual server name.

You can type the OU details in the format **CN=Computers,DC=domainname,DC=com**.

To search for the OU, click the ellipsis button and specify the search criteria in the Windows Find Organizational Units dialog box.

By default, the Lanman resource adds the virtual server name to the default container "Computers."
- 6 On the Specify Data Path panel, specify the volumes for the MSDTC log and the replication directory and then click **Next**.

Symantec recommends using different paths for these directories. If the directory does not exist, the wizard creates it.
  - 7 On the Service Group Summary panel, review the service group configuration and change the resource names if desired, as follows:

    - The Resources box lists the configured resources. Click on a resource to view its attributes and their configured values in the Attributes box.
    - The wizard assigns unique names to resources. Change names of the resources, if desired. To edit a resource name, select the resource name and either click it or press the **F2** key. Press **Enter** after editing each resource name. To cancel editing a resource name, press the **Esc** key.
    - Click **Next**.
  - 8 Click **Yes** on the message that prompts you that the wizard will run commands to modify the service group configuration.

Various messages indicate the status of these commands.

- 9 In the Configuration Complete panel, check **Bring the service group online** to bring the configured service group online and then click **Finish** to exit the wizard.  
To bring the service group online later, uncheck the option.

## About configuring the MSDTC client for SQL Server

Configure the MSDTC client after configuring the service group for the MSDTC Server. Set the MSDTC client to run on nodes where a SQL instance is configured to run and the MSDTC server is not configured to run. In general, you must configure the MSDTC client on all nodes except the nodes on which the MSDTC Server is configured. You do not need to configure the MSDTC client on the nodes that are part of the MSDTC service group.

The MSDTC client and the MSDTC Server must not run on the same cluster nodes.

---

**Note:** You have to configure the MSDTC client manually. You cannot use the SQL Server Configuration Wizard to configure the MSDTC client.

---

Procedures for Windows 2003 and Windows 2008 are different. Follow the appropriate procedure depending on the operating system.

### Configuring MSDTC client on Windows 2003

Complete the MSDTC client and security configuration on Windows 2003 systems as described in the following procedure.

#### To configure an MSDTC client on Windows 2003

- 1 Ensure that the MSDTC service group is online.
- 2 Launch the Windows Component Services Administrative tool.  
Click **Start > Programs > Administrative Tools > Component Services**  
or  
Click **Start > Run**, type **dcomcnfg** and click **OK**.
- 3 In the console tree of the Component Services administrative tool, expand **Component Services > Computers**, right-click **My Computer** and then click **Properties**.
- 4 On the MSDTC tab perform the following steps:
  - Clear the **Use local coordinator** check box.
  - In the Remote Host field, specify the virtual server name that you specified while creating the MSDTC Server service group.  
If you are unsure of the exact name, click **Select** to search from a list of all computers on the network and select the virtual computer name from the list.
  - Click **Apply** and then click **OK**.

## Configuring MSDTC client on Windows 2008

Complete the MSDTC client and security configuration on Windows 2008 systems as described in the following procedure.

### To configure an MSDTC client on Windows 2008

- 1 Ensure that the MSDTC service group is online.
- 2 Launch the Windows Component Services Administrative tool.  
Click **Start > All Programs > Administrative Tools > Component Services**  
or  
Click **Start > Run**, type **dcomcnfg** and click **OK**.
- 3 In the console tree of the Component Services administrative tool, expand **Component Services > Computers**, right-click **My Computer** and then click **Properties**.
- 4 On the MSDTC tab, perform the following steps:
  - Clear the **Use local coordinator** check box.
  - In the Remote Host field, specify the virtual server name that you specified while creating the MSDTC Server service group.  
If you are unsure of the exact name, click **Select** to search from a list of all computers on the network and select the virtual computer name from the list.
  - Click **Apply** and then click **OK**.

## About the VCS Application Manager utility

VCS starts the MSDTC service in the cluster under the context of the virtual server. Because the MMC snap-in is not aware of such a configuration, it is not possible to view the transactions on the DTC virtual server from a node where the MSDTC resource is online.

VCS provides a utility, the VCS Application Manager (VAM), that enables you to view the distributed transaction statistics on the DTC virtual server from a node where the MSDTC resource is online.

## Viewing DTC transaction information

In cases where a communication line fails or a distributed transaction application leaves unresolved transactions, you might want to view transaction lists and statistics, control which transactions are displayed, set transaction time-out periods, and control how often transactions are updated. The following steps describe how to view the DTC transactions information.

Prerequisites for viewing DTC transaction information are as follows:

- An MSDTC service group must be configured and online in the cluster.
- MSDTC client must be configured on the nodes on which you wish to view the transactions.
- The MSDTC service group must be online on the node where you run the VCS Application Manager utility.

To view transactions from a node where MSDTC resource is online

- 1 Start the VCS Application Manager utility.

In the Solutions Configuration Center (SCC), under Tools, click **VCS Application Manager**.

or

Click **Start > Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > Application Manager**.

The VCS Application Manager displays a list of supported application service groups configured in the cluster. For each service group it also displays the state of the service group, the name of the virtual server resource (Lanman resource) and the corresponding management tools used for that application.

- 2 Select **MSDTC** from the Select the resource type drop-down list.
- 3 Select the MSDTC resource that is online and then click **Manage**, or double-click the MSDTC resource name.

VAM launches the Component Services snap-in in the virtual server context.

- 4 In the console tree of the Component Services administrative tool, expand **Component Services > Computers > My Computer > Distributed Transaction Coordinator > Local DTC**.
- 5 Click **Transaction List** to view all transactions, their status, and their identifiers. Right-click a transaction and click **View > Properties** to list the parent transaction and its children.
- 6 Click **Transaction Statistics** to view statistical information about the transactions in which a server participated.  
You can use transaction statistics to get an overview of DTC performance. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for further information.

#### To view transactions from any node in the domain

- 1 Launch the Windows Component Services Administrative tool.  
Click **Start > Programs > Administrative Tools > Component Services**  
or  
Click **Start > Run**, type **dcomcnfg** and click **OK**.
- 2 In the console tree of the Component Services administrative tool, double-click **Component Services**, right-click **Computers**, click **New > Computer**.
- 3 In the Add Computer dialog box, specify the virtual server name that you specified while creating the MSDTC Server service group. If you are unsure of the exact name, click **Browse** to search from a list of all computers on the network and select the virtual computer name from the list.
- 4 Click **OK**. The virtual computer entry is added to the Computers container.
- 5 Expand the newly added virtual computer entry and double-click **Distributed Transaction Coordinator**.
- 6 Click **Transaction List** to view all transactions, their status, and their identifiers. Right-click a transaction and click **View > Properties** to list the parent transaction and its children.
- 7 Click **Transaction Statistics** to view statistical information about the transactions in which a server participated.  
You can use transaction statistics to get an overview of DTC performance. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for further information.

# Modifying a SQL Server service group to add VMDg and MountV resources

If you create a new SQL Server database after you have created the SQL Server service group, you must rerun the SQL Server Configuration Wizard to modify the service group. This allows the wizard to add VMDg and MountV resources for the new databases, to the existing SQL Server service group.

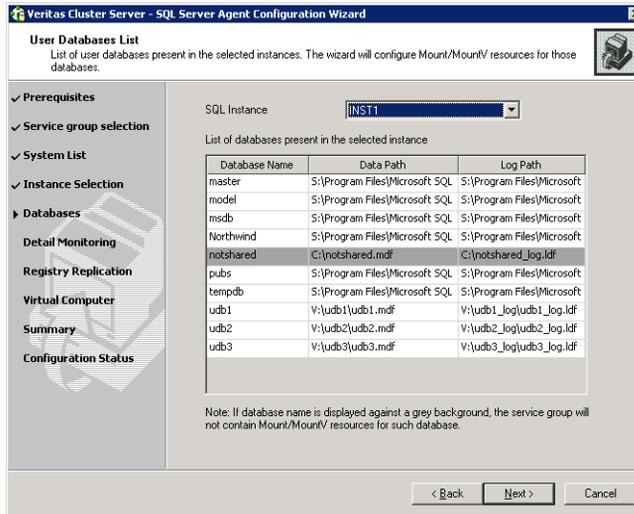
Ensure the following before running the SQL Server Configuration Wizard to add the VMDg and MountV resources:

- Make sure the SQL Server resources are online.
- Make sure the volumes for the user database and transaction logs are mounted on the node.

## To add VMDg and MountV resources using the SQL Server Configuration Wizard

- 1 Start the SQL Server Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center or click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > SQL Server Configuration Wizard**.
- 2 Select the **MS-SQL Server Service Group Configuration**, select the **Edit** option, and click **Next**.
- 3 Review the Prerequisites page and click **Next**.
- 4 In the Service Group Selection page, select the service group and click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Yes** on the message informing you that the service is not completely offline. No adverse consequences are implied.
- 6 In the Service Group Configuration page, click **Next**.
- 7 In the SQL Server Instance Selection page, make sure the correct instance of SQL Server is selected and click **Next**.
- 8 In the User Databases List page, make sure the databases are shown with correct paths and click **Next**.

Databases that are highlighted will not contain MountV resources.



- 9 If a database is not configured correctly, a warning appears indicating potential problems. Click **OK** to continue.
- 10 In the Detail Monitoring and succeeding pages, review the information and click **Next** to continue.
- 11 Click **Yes** to continue when a message indicates the configuration will be modified.
- 12 To complete the user database configuration, choose one of the following:
  - Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.  
The wizard marks all the resources in the service group as **CRITICAL**. If desired, use Cluster Manager (Java Console) or the command line to change the state.
  - Click **Next** to configure another SQL service group or an MSDTC service group.

## Determining additional steps needed

This completes the high availability configuration steps for SQL Server. Depending on the configuration being deployed, there are additional steps that you must perform to set up and complete the configuration.

[Table 7-1](#) contains a list of references to the chapters that describe configuration specific tasks in detail. Proceed to the desired chapter depending on the desired configuration.

You must perform the configuration specific tasks only after you complete the high availability steps mentioned in this and the earlier chapters.

**Table 7-1** Additional SQL Server configuration steps

Tasks	Refer to
	Deployment
Setting up a campus cluster configuration for SQL Server	<a href="#">“Tasks for configuring campus clusters”</a> on page 186
Setting up a replicated data cluster configuration for SQL Server	<a href="#">“Tasks for configuring Replicated Data Clusters”</a> on page 190
Setting up a disaster recovery configuration for SQL Server	<a href="#">“Tasks for configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server”</a> on page 242
Configuring and running a fire drill for SQL Server configuration	<a href="#">“About disaster recovery fire drills”</a> on page 297



# Configuring campus clusters for SQL Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Tasks for configuring campus clusters](#)
- [Modifying the IP resource in the SQL Server service group](#)
- [Verifying the campus cluster: Switching the service group](#)
- [Setting the ForceImport attribute to 1 after a site failure](#)

## Tasks for configuring campus clusters

In campus clusters you begin by configuring a high availability cluster and then continue with the steps specific to the campus cluster configuration.

Refer to the campus cluster configuration workflow table for a complete list of configuration steps.

See “[VCS campus cluster configuration](#)” on page 42.

[Table 8-1](#) shows the steps specific to the campus cluster configuration that are done after configuring high availability on the nodes.

**Table 8-1** Completing campus cluster configuration

Action	Description
Modify the IP resource in the SQL Server service group	Modify the IP resource in the SQL Server service group. See “ <a href="#">Modifying the IP resource in the SQL Server service group</a> ” on page 186.
Verify the campus cluster configuration	Verify that failover occurs between the nodes. See “ <a href="#">Verifying the campus cluster: Switching the service group</a> ” on page 187.
Set the ForceImport attribute	In case of a site failure, you may have to set the ForceImport attribute to ensure proper failover. See “ <a href="#">Setting the ForceImport attribute to 1 after a site failure</a> ” on page 188.

## Modifying the IP resource in the SQL Server service group

Use the Java Console to modify the Address and SubNetMask attributes of the IP resource in the SQL Server service group.

---

**Note:** This procedure is only applicable to a campus cluster with sites in different subnets.

---

### To modify the IP resource

- 1 From the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, select the IP resource in the SQL Server service group.
- 2 In the Properties View, click the **Edit** icon for the **Address** attribute.

- 3 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, make the following selections:
  - Select the **Per System** option.
  - Select the system at Site B.
  - Enter the virtual IP address at Site B.
  - Click **OK**.
- 4 In the Properties View, click the **Edit** icon for the **SubNetMask** attribute.
- 5 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, make the following selections:
  - Select the **Per System** option.
  - Select the system at Site B.
  - Enter the subnet mask at Site B.
  - Click **OK**.
- 6 From the **File** menu of Cluster Explorer, click **Close Configuration**.

## Verifying the campus cluster: Switching the service group

Failover simulation is an important part of configuration testing.

### To verify the campus cluster is functioning properly

- 1 Bring the service group online on one node as follows:
  - In the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, right-click the service group.
  - Click **Online**, and click the appropriate system from the menu.
- 2 Switch the service group to the other node as follows:
  - In the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, right-click the service group.
  - Click **Switch To**, and click the appropriate system from the menu.

## Setting the ForceImport attribute to 1 after a site failure

ForceImport is a flag that defines whether the agent forcibly imports the disk group when exactly half the disks are available. The value 1 indicates the agent imports the configured disk group when half the disks are available. The value 0 indicates it does not. Default is 0. This means that the disk group will be imported only when SFW acquires control over the majority of the disks.

---

**Warning:** Set this attribute to 1 only after verifying the integrity of your data. If due caution is not exercised before setting this attribute to 1, you risk potential data loss.

---

You must set the ForceImport attribute for the VMDg resource to 1 after a site failure to ensure proper failover.

### To set the ForceImport attribute to 1 from the Java Console

- 1 From the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, select the VMDg resource in the SQL Server service group.
- 2 In the Properties View, click the **Edit** icon for the **ForceImport** attribute.
- 3 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, make the following selections:
  - Select the **Per System** option.
  - Select the system in Site B.
  - Select the **ForceImport** check box.
  - Click **OK**.
- 4 From the **File** menu of Cluster Explorer, click **Close Configuration**.
- 5 After the failover takes place, revert the ForceImport attribute to its original value.

### To set the ForceImport attribute to 1 from the command line

- ◆ Use the following command for implementing the force import setting in VCS:

```
hares -modify <vmdg_resource_name> ForceImport 1|0
```

Example:

```
hares -modify vmdg_Dg1 ForceImport 1
```

Import is forced on vmdg\_Dg1.

# Configuring Replicated Data Clusters for SQL Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Tasks for configuring Replicated Data Clusters](#)
- [Creating the primary system zone](#)
- [Creating a parallel environment in the secondary zone](#)
- [Adding the systems in the secondary zone to the cluster](#)
- [Setting up security for VVR](#)
- [Setting up the Replicated Data Sets \(RDS\)](#)
- [Configuring a hybrid RVG service group for replication](#)
- [Setting a dependency between the service groups](#)
- [Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC](#)
- [Verifying the RDC configuration](#)
- [Additional instructions for GCO disaster recovery](#)

# Tasks for configuring Replicated Data Clusters

For a Replicated Data Cluster (RDC) you begin by configuring a high availability cluster on the primary zone systems.

You then continue with the steps specific to the RDC configuration.

For the complete RDC configuration workflow see “[VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration](#)” on page 45.

[Table 9-1](#) shows the steps specific to the RDC configuration that are done after configuring high availability on the primary zone.

**Table 9-1**            Completing the configuration of a Replicated Data Cluster

Action	Description
Create the primary system zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create the primary system zone</li> <li>■ Add the nodes to the primary zone</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Creating the primary system zone</a>” on page 192.</p>
Verify failover within the primary zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ See “<a href="#">Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration</a>” on page 171.</li> </ul>
Create a parallel environment in the secondary zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Install SFW HA on the systems in the secondary zone</li> <li>■ Configure disk groups and volumes using the same names as on the primary zone</li> <li>■ Install SQL Server following the prerequisites and guidelines for installing on the second zone.</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Creating a parallel environment in the secondary zone</a>” on page 193.</p>
Add the secondary zone systems to the cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Add the secondary zone systems to the cluster.</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Adding the systems in the secondary zone to the cluster</a>” on page 194.</p>
Set up security for VVR on all cluster nodes	<p>Set up security for VVR on all nodes in both zones.</p> <p>This step can be done at any time after installing SFW HA on all cluster nodes, but must be done before configuring VVR replication.</p> <p>See “<a href="#">Setting up security for VVR</a>” on page 200.</p>
Set up the Replicated Data Set	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard to create RDS and start replication for the primary and secondary zones</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS)</a>” on page 203.</p>

**Table 9-1** Completing the configuration of a Replicated Data Cluster

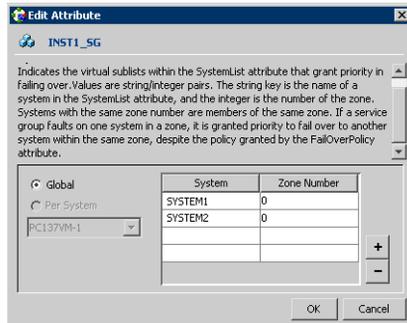
Action	Description
Configure a hybrid RVG service group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a hybrid Replicated Volume Group (RVG) service group</li> <li>■ Configure the hybrid RVG service group</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Configuring a hybrid RVG service group for replication</a>” on page 215.</p>
Set a dependency between the service groups	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set up a dependency from the RVG service group to the SQL Server service group</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Setting a dependency between the service groups</a>” on page 230.</p>
Add the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Add the nodes from the secondary zone to the RVG service group</li> <li>■ Configure the IP resources for failover</li> <li>■ Add the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server service group</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC</a>” on page 231.</p>
Verify the RDC configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Verify that failover occurs first within zones and then from the primary to the secondary zone</li> </ul> <p>See “<a href="#">Verifying the RDC configuration</a>” on page 237.</p>

## Creating the primary system zone

In the service group, set up systems in the primary zone (zone 0) to specify that initial failover occurs to systems within the primary zone.

### To set up the primary system zone

- 1 From VCS Cluster Manager (Java Console), log on to the cluster.
- 2 Select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane and the Properties tab in the right pane.
- 3 In the Properties pane, click the button **Show All Attributes**.
- 4 In the Attributes View, scroll down and select the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 5 Click the **Edit** icon for the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 6 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, click the plus sign and enter the systems and the zone number (zone 0) for the primary zone. Make sure you specify the systems in uppercase.



- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 After setting up the primary system zone, you can verify failover within the primary zone.  
See [“Verifying the SQL Server cluster configuration”](#) on page 171.

## Creating a parallel environment in the secondary zone

After setting up a SFW HA environment in the primary zone, you set up a parallel environment in the secondary zone.

Before you begin to configure the secondary zone, do the following:

- Offline the following resources in the SQL service group in the primary zone:
  - SQL Server resource (<sqlservicegroupname> - SQLServer2005 or <sqlservicegroupname> - SQLServer2000)
  - SQL Virtual Server name resource (<sqlservicegroupname> - Lanman)
  - SQL Virtual IP resource (<sqlservicegroupname> - IP)

The remaining resources should be online, including the VMDg resources and the MountV resources.

- In VEA, make sure to remove all the drive letters from the configured volumes, to avoid conflicts when configuring the zones.

Then complete the following tasks to configure the secondary zone, using the guidelines shown:

- [“Configuring the storage hardware and network”](#) on page 108
- [“Installing Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows”](#) on page 110
- [“Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server”](#) on page 117

During the creation of disk groups and volumes for the secondary zone, make sure the following is exactly the same as the cluster at the primary zone:

- Cluster disk group name
- Volume sizes
- Volume names
- Drive letters
- Installing and configuring SQL Server on the first cluster node  
Choose the appropriate topic from the following:
  - [“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”](#) on page 153
  - [“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”](#) on page 155

When installing SQL Server make sure that you select the same installation options as you did for the primary zone. The instance name must be the same in the primary zone and secondary zone

- [“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”](#) on page 157  
After you install SQL Server on the nodes in the secondary zone, make sure to use VEA to remove all the drive letters from the configured volumes.

You do not create another cluster in the secondary zone. Instead you add the systems to the existing cluster.

See [“Adding the systems in the secondary zone to the cluster”](#) on page 194.

You do not create another SQL service group in the secondary zone. You continue with the remaining VVR configuration tasks, during which the secondary zone nodes will be added to the SQL service group.

For the complete RDC workflow, see [“VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration”](#) on page 45.

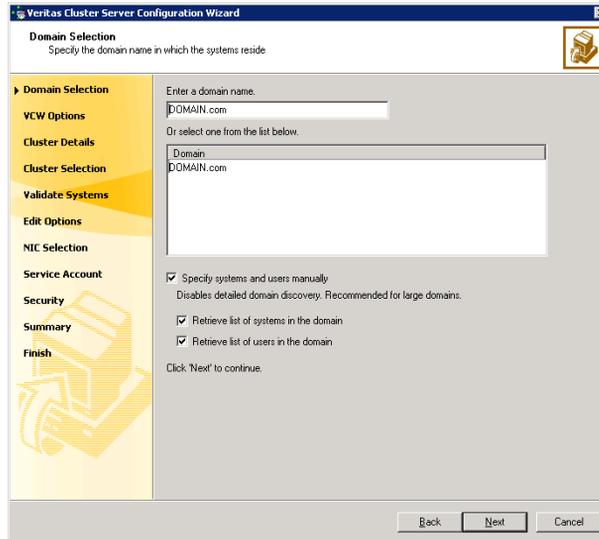
## Adding the systems in the secondary zone to the cluster

Add the nodes in the secondary zone to the existing cluster with the following procedure.

### To add a node to a VCS cluster

- 1 Start the VCS Cluster Configuration wizard.  
Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > Cluster Configuration Wizard**.  
Run the wizard from the node to be added or from a node in the cluster. The node that is being added should be part of the domain to which the cluster belongs.
- 2 Read the information on the Welcome panel and click **Next**.
- 3 On the Configuration Options panel, click **Cluster Operations** and click **Next**.

- 4 In the Domain Selection panel, select or type the name of the domain in which the cluster resides and select the discovery options.



Do one of the following:

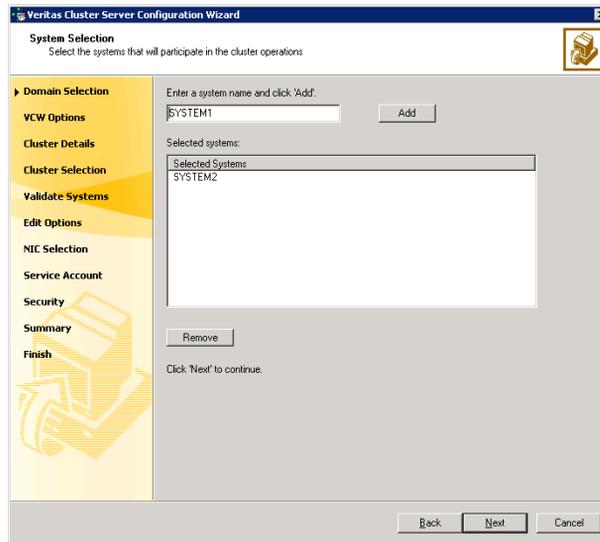
- To discover information about all the systems and users in the domain:
  - Clear the **Specify systems and users manually** check box.
  - Click **Next**.

Proceed to [step 8](#) on page 198.

- To specify systems and user names manually (recommended for large domains):
  - Check the **Specify systems and users manually** check box. Additionally, you may instruct the wizard to retrieve a list of systems and users in the domain by selecting appropriate check boxes.
  - Click **Next**.

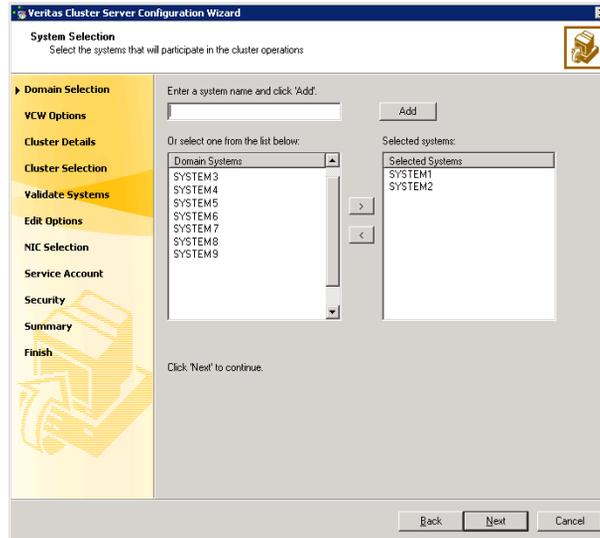
If you chose to retrieve the list of systems, proceed to [step 6](#) on page 197. Otherwise proceed to the next step.

- 5 On the System Selection panel, complete the following and click **Next**.



- Type the name of a node in the cluster and click **Add**.
  - Type the name of the system to be added to the cluster and click **Add**.
- If you specify only one node of an existing cluster, the wizard discovers all nodes for that cluster. To add a node to an existing cluster, you must specify a minimum of two nodes; one that is already a part of a cluster and the other that is to be added to the cluster.
- Proceed to [step 8](#) on page 198.

- 6 On the System Selection panel, specify the systems to be added and the nodes for the cluster to which you are adding the systems.



Enter the system name and click **Add** to add the system to the **Selected Systems** list. Alternatively, you can select the systems from the **Domain Systems** list and click the right-arrow icon.

If you specify only one node of an existing cluster, the wizard discovers all nodes for that cluster. To add a node to an existing cluster, you must specify a minimum of two nodes; one that is already a part of a cluster and the other that is to be added to the cluster.

- 7 The System Report panel displays the validation status, whether *Accepted* or *Rejected*, of all the systems you specified earlier. Review the status and then click **Next**.

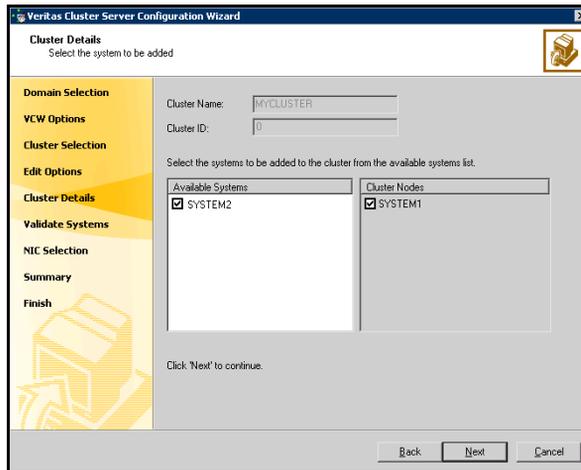
A system can be rejected for any of the following reasons:

- System is not pingable.
- WMI access is disabled on the system.
- Wizard is unable to retrieve the system architecture or operating system.
- VCS is either not installed on the system or the version of VCS is different from what is installed on the system on which you are running the wizard.

Click on a system name to see the validation details. If you wish to include a rejected system, rectify the error based on the reason for rejection and then run the wizard again.

- 8 On the Cluster Configuration Options panel, click **Edit Existing Cluster** and click **Next**.
- 9 On the Cluster Selection panel, select the cluster to be edited and click **Next**. If you chose to specify the systems manually in [step 4](#), only the clusters configured with the specified systems are displayed.
- 10 On the Edit Cluster Options panel, click **Add Nodes** and click **Next**. In the Cluster User Information dialog box, type the user name and password for a user with administrative privileges to the cluster and click **OK**.

The Cluster User Information dialog box appears only when you add a node to a cluster with VCS user privileges, that is when the cluster configuration does not use the Symantec Product Authentication Service for secure cluster communication.
- 11 On the Cluster Details panel, check the check boxes next to the systems to be added to the cluster and click **Next**.



The right pane lists nodes that are part of the cluster. The left pane lists systems that can be added to the cluster.

- 12 The wizard validates the selected systems for cluster membership. After the nodes have been validated, click **Next**.

If a node does not get validated, review the message associated with the failure and restart the wizard after rectifying the problem.
- 13 On the Private Network Configuration panel, configure the VCS private network communication on each system being added and then click **Next**. How you configure the VCS private network communication depends on how it is configured in the cluster. If LLT is configured over ethernet, you

have to use the same on the nodes being added. Similarly, if LLT is configured over UDP in the cluster, you have use the same on the nodes being added.

Do one of the following:

- To configure the VCS private network over ethernet, complete the following steps:
  - Select the check boxes next to the two NICs to be assigned to the private network.  
Symantec recommends reserving two NICs exclusively for the private network. However, you could lower the priority of one NIC and use the low-priority NIC for both public and private communication.
  - If you have only two NICs on a selected system, it is recommended that you lower the priority of at least one NIC that will be used for private as well as public network communication.  
To lower the priority of a NIC, right-click the NIC and select **Low Priority** from the pop-up menu.
  - If your configuration contains teamed NICs, the wizard groups them as "NIC Group #N" where "N" is a number assigned to the teamed NIC. A teamed NIC is a logical NIC, formed by grouping several physical NICs together. All NICs in a team have an identical MAC address. Symantec recommends that you do not select teamed NICs for the private network.

The wizard will configure the LLT service (over ethernet) on the selected network adapters.

- To configure the VCS private network over the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) layer, complete the following steps:
  - Check the **Configure LLT over UDP** check box.
  - Specify a unique UDP port in the **Port number for Link1** and **Port number for Link2** fields. You can use ports in the range 49152 to 65535. The default ports numbers are 50000 and 50001 respectively.
  - Select the check boxes next to the two NICs to be assigned to the private network. Symantec recommends reserving two NICs exclusively for the VCS private network.
  - For each selected NIC, verify the displayed IP address. If a selected NIC has multiple IP addresses assigned, double-click the field and choose the desired IP address from the drop-down list. Each IP address can be in a different subnet.  
The IP address is used for the VCS private communication over the specified UDP port.

- For each selected NIC, double-click the respective field in the Link column and choose a link from the drop-down list. Specify a different link (Link1 or Link2) for each NIC. Each link is associated with a UDP port that you specified earlier.

The wizard will configure the LLT service (over UDP) on the selected network adapters. The specified UDP ports will be used for the private network communication.

- 14 On the Public Network Communication panel, select a NIC for public network communication, for each system that is being added, and then click **Next**.

This step is applicable only if you have configured the ClusterService service group, and the system being added has multiple adapters. If the system has only one adapter for public network communication, the wizard configures that adapter automatically.

- 15 Specify the password for the user in whose context the VCS Helper service runs.
- 16 Review the summary information and click **Add**.
- 17 The wizard starts running commands to add the node. After all commands have been successfully run, click **Finish**.

## Setting up security for VVR

If you are using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) replication, you must configure the VxSAS service on all cluster nodes. For a Replicated Data Cluster environment, you configure the service on all nodes in both the primary and secondary zones.

### Configuring the VxSAS service

Complete the following procedure to configure the VxSAS service for VVR.

The procedure has these prerequisites:

- You must be logged on with administrative privileges on the server for the wizard to be launched.
- The account you specify must have administrative and log-on as service privileges on all the specified hosts.
- Avoid specifying blank passwords. In a Windows Server environment, accounts with blank passwords are not supported for log-on service privileges.

- Make sure that the hosts on which you want to configure the VxSAS service are accessible from the local host.

---

**Note:** The VxSAS wizard will not be launched automatically after installing SFW or SFW HA. You must launch this wizard manually to complete the VVR security service configuration. For details on this required service, see *Veritas Storage Foundation Veritas Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide*.

---

### To configure the VxSAS service

- 1 To launch the wizard, select **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Configuration Wizards > VVR Security Service Configuration Wizard** or run `vxsascfg.exe` from the command prompt of the required machine.  
 Read the information provided on the Welcome page and click **Next**.
- 2 Complete the Account Information panel as follows:

Account name (domain\account)	Enter the administrative account name.
Password	Specify a password.

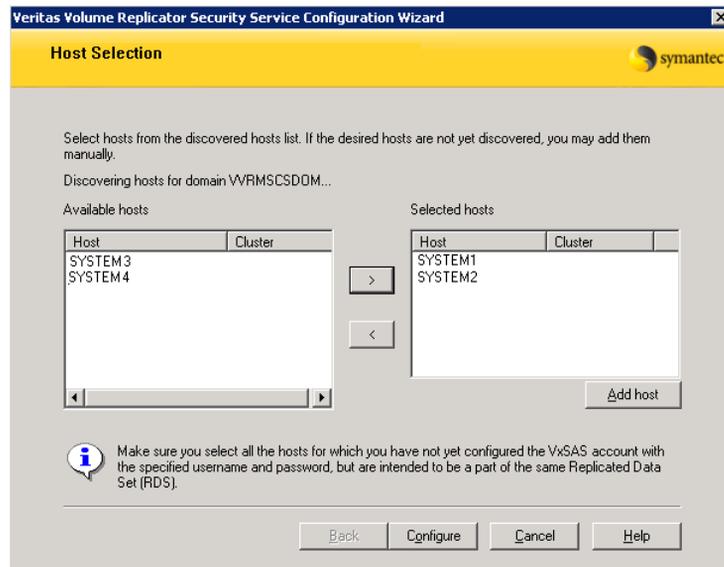
If you have already configured the VxSAS service for one host that is intended to be a part of the RDS, make sure you specify the same username and password when configuring the VxSAS service on the other hosts. Click **Next**.

- 3 On the Domain Selection panel, select the domain to which the hosts that you want to configure belong:

Selecting domains	The Available domains pane lists all the domains that are present in the Windows network neighborhood.  Move the appropriate name from the Available domains list to the Selected domains list, either by double-clicking it or using the arrow button.
Adding a domain	If the domain name that you require is not displayed, click <b>Add domain</b> . This displays a dialog that allows you to specify the domain name. Click <b>Add</b> to add the name to the Selected domains list.

Click **Next**.

- 4 On the Host Selection panel, select the required hosts:



Selecting hosts

The Available hosts pane lists the hosts that are present in the specified domain.

Move the appropriate host from the Available hosts list to the Selected hosts list, either by double-clicking it or using the arrow button. Use the Shift key with the up or down arrow keys to select multiple hosts.

Adding a host

If the host name you require is not displayed, click **Add host**. In the Add Host dialog specify the required host name or IP in the **Host Name** field. Click **Add** to add the name to the Selected hosts list.

After you have selected a host name, the **Configure** button is enabled. Click **Configure** to proceed with configuring the VxSAS service.

- 5 After the configuration completes, the Configuration Results page displays whether or not the operation was successful. If the operation was not successful, the page displays the details on why the account update failed, along with the possible reasons for failure and recommendations on getting over the failure.  
Click **Back** to change any information you had provided earlier.
- 6 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

## Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS)

Set up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS) in the primary zone and secondary zone. You can configure an RDS for both zones using the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard.

### Prerequisites for setting up the RDS for the primary and secondary zones

Before you run the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard, verify the following:

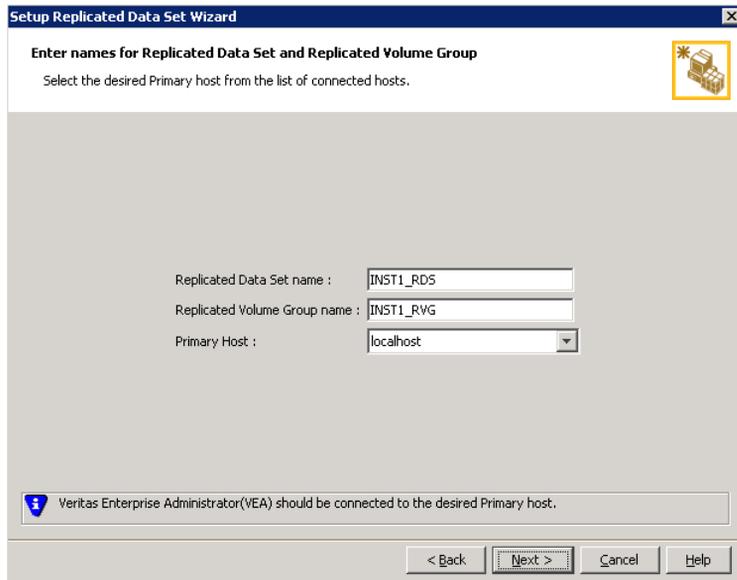
- Verify that the data volumes are not of the following types as VVR does not support these types of volumes:
  - Storage Foundation for Windows (software) RAID 5 volumes
  - Volumes with a Dirty Region Log (DRL)
  - Volumes that are already part of another RVG
  - Volumes names containing a comma
- Verify that the cluster disk group is imported and the volumes are mounted in the primary and secondary zone
- Verify that you have configured security for VVR  
See “[Setting up security for VVR](#)” on page 200.

### Creating the Replicated Data Sets with the wizard

#### To create the Replicated Data Set

- 1 From the cluster node on the Primary where the cluster disk group is imported, launch the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA):
  - Use the VEA console to launch the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard.  
*OR*
  - Launch the VEA by clicking **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Veritas Enterprise Administrator**.  
From the VEA console, click **View > Connection > Replication Network**.
- 2 Right-click **Replication Network** and select **Set up Replicated Data Set**.
- 3 Read the Welcome page and click **Next**.

- 4 Specify names for the Replicated Data Set (RDS) and Replicated Volume Group (RVG).

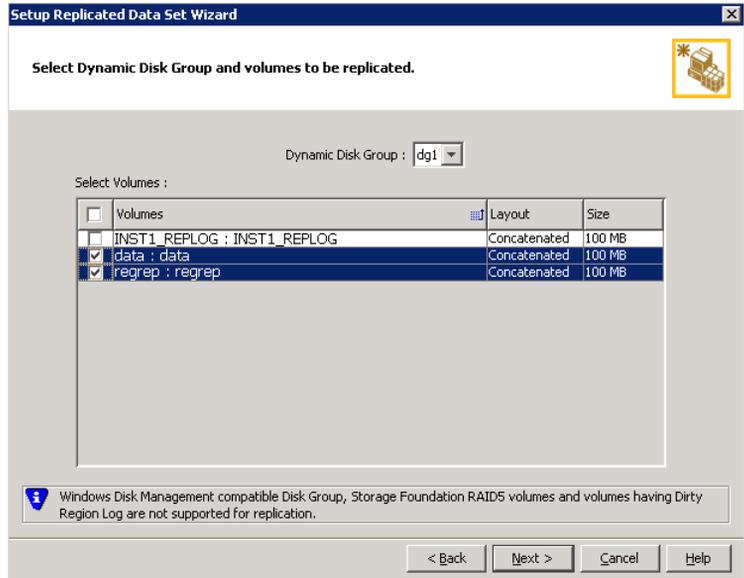


By default, the local host is selected as the **Primary Host**. To specify a different host name, make sure the required host is connected to the VEA console and select it in the **Primary Host** list.

If the required primary host is not connected to the VEA console, it does not appear in the drop-down list of the Primary Host field. Use the VEA console to connect to the host.

- 5 Click **Next**.

- 6 Select from the table the dynamic disk group and data volumes that will undergo replication.

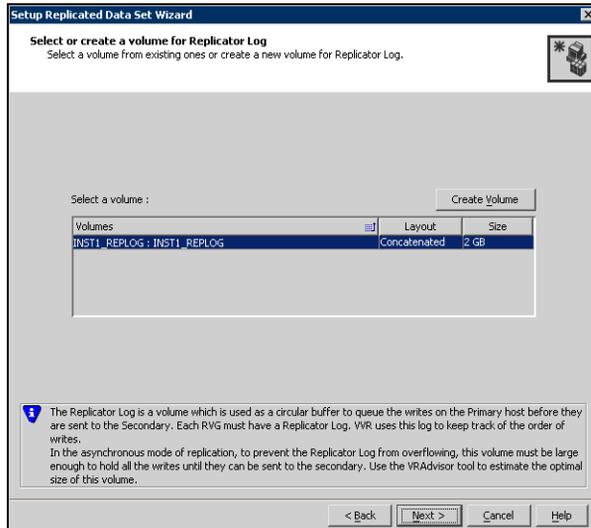


To select multiple volumes, press the Shift or Control key while using the up or down arrow keys.

By default, a mirrored DCM log is automatically added for all selected volumes. If disk space is inadequate to create a DCM log with two plexes, a single plex is created.

- 7 Click **Next**.

8 Complete the select or create a volume for Replicator Log page as follows:



To select an existing volume

- Select the volume for the Replicator Log in the table (INST1\_REPLOG). If the volume does not appear in the table, click **Back** and verify that the Replicator Log volume was not selected on the previous page.
- Click **Next**.

To create a new volume

- Click **Create Volume** and enter the following information in the dialog box that displays.

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Name</b>   | Enter the name for the volume in the <b>Name</b> field. |
| <b>Size</b>   | Enter a size for the volume in the <b>Size</b> field.   |
| <b>Layout</b> | Select the desired volume layout.                       |

**Disk Selection**

Enables you to specify the disk selection method.

- Enable the **Thin Provisioned Disks Only** checkbox to ensure that the Replicator Log volume is created only on Thin Provisioned (TP) disks.

**Note:** The checkbox will remain disabled if the diskgroup does not have any TP disk.

If this option is selected along with the **Select disks automatically** option, then the Replicator Log volume will be created only on TP disks. However, if you enable this checkbox along with **Select disks manually** option, then the user can select only TP disks from **Available Disks**.

For more information on Thin Provisioning refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

- Choose the **Select disks automatically** option if you want VVR to select the disks.
- Choose the **Select disks manually** option to use specific disks from the Available disks pane for creating the volume. Either double-click on it or select **Add** to move the disks into the Selected disks pane.

- Click **OK** to create the Replicator Log volume.
- Click **Next** in the **Select or create a volume for Replicator Log** dialog box.

9 Review the information on the summary page and click **Create Primary RVG**.

10 After the Primary RVG has been created successfully, VVR displays the following message:

RDS with Primary RVG has been created successfully. Do you want to add Secondary host to this RDS for replication now?

Click **No** to exit the Setup Replicated Data Set wizard without adding the Secondary host. To add the Secondary host later, use the **Add Secondary** option from the RDS right-click menu.

Click **Yes** to add the Secondary host to the Primary RDS now. The Specify Secondary host for replication page appears.

11 On the Specify Secondary host for replication page, enter the name or IP address of the Secondary host in the **Secondary Host** field. Click **Next**. If the Secondary host is not connected to VEA, the wizard tries to connect it when you click **Next**. This wizard allows you to specify only one Secondary host. Additional Secondary hosts can be added using the Add Secondary option from the RDS right-click menu.

Wait till the connection process is complete and then click **Next** again.

- 12 If only a disk group without any data volumes or Replicator Log, as on the Primary host exists on the Secondary, then VVR displays a message. Read the message carefully.  
The option to automatically create volumes on the Secondary host is available only if the disks that are part of the disk group have:
  - the same or larger amount of space as that on the Primary
  - Enough space to create volumes with the same layout as on the PrimaryOtherwise, the RDS setup wizard enables you to create the required volumes manually.
  - Click **Yes** to automatically create the Secondary data volumes and the Replicator Log.
  - Click **No** to create the Secondary data volumes and the Replicator Log manually, using the Volume Information on the connected hosts page.
- 13 The Volume Information on connected hosts page appears. This page displays information on the availability of volumes on the Secondary nodes, if the Primary and Secondary hosts are connected to VEA.  
This page does not appear if all the required volumes that are available on the Primary host are also available on the Secondary hosts.
  - If the required data volumes and the Replicator Log have not been created on the Secondary host, then the page displays the appropriate message against the volume name on the Secondary.
  - If an error occurs or a volume needs to be created, a volume displays with a red icon and a description of the situation. To address the error, or to create a new Replicator Log volume on the secondary site, click the volume on the secondary site, click the available task button and follow the wizard.  
Depending on the discrepancies between the volumes on the primary site and the secondary site, you may have to create a new volume, recreate or resize a volume (change attributes), or remove either a DRL or DCM log.  
When all the replicated volumes meet the replication requirements and display a green check mark, click **Next**.
  - If all the data volumes to be replicated meet the requirements, this screen does not occur.

- 14 Complete the Edit replication settings page to specify the basic and advanced replication settings for a Secondary host as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard' dialog box, specifically the 'Edit replication settings' page. The title bar reads 'Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard'. Below the title bar, the text 'Edit replication settings' is displayed, followed by the instruction 'Edit replication settings or click next.' and a small icon of a server rack. The main area contains several configuration fields:

- Primary side IP: 10.217.53.214
- Secondary side IP: 10.217.53.215
- Replication Mode: Synchronous Override
- Replicator Log Protection: AutoDCM
- Primary RLINK Name: Pri\_RLINK
- Secondary RLINK Name: Sec\_RLINK

At the bottom right, there is an 'Advanced' button. At the bottom left, there is a warning icon and the text 'DHCP addresses are not supported by VWR.' At the bottom right, there are navigation buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

- To modify each of the default values listed on this page, select the required value from the drop-down list for each property. If you do not wish to modify basic properties then replication can be started with the default values when you click **Next**.

**Primary side IP** Enter the virtual IP address for the Primary IP resource that will be used for replication. If there is more than one IP address available for replication, you can choose the one that you want to use from the drop-down list. If the required IP address is not displayed in the list then edit the field to add the IP address.

**Secondary side IP** Enter the virtual IP address on the Secondary that is to be used for replication. If there is more than one IP address available for replication, you can choose the one that you want to use from the drop-down list. If the required IP address is not displayed in the list then edit the field to add the IP address.

Replication Mode Select the required mode of replication: **Synchronous Override, Synchronous, or Asynchronous**. The default is synchronous override.

**Synchronous Override** enables synchronous updates under typical operating conditions. If the Secondary site is disconnected from the Primary site, and write operations occur on the Primary site, the mode of replication temporarily switches to Asynchronous.

**Synchronous** determines updates from the application on the Primary site are completed only after the Secondary site successfully receives the updates.

**Asynchronous** determines updates from the application on the Primary site are completed after VVR updates in the Replicator Log. From there, VVR writes the data to the data volume and replicates the updates to the secondary site asynchronously.

If the Secondary is set to the synchronous mode of replication and is disconnected, the Primary data volumes with NTFS file systems may be displayed with the status as `MISSING`.

Replicator Log Protection The **AutoDCM** is the default selected mode for the Replicator Log overflow protection when all the volumes in the Primary RVG have a DCM log. The DCM is enabled when the Replicator Log overflows.

The **DCM** option enables the Replicator Log protection for the Secondary host when the Replicator Log overflows, and the connection between the Primary and Secondary is lost. This option is available only if all the data volumes under the Primary RVG have a DCM Log associated with them.

The **Off** option disables Replicator Log Overflow protection.

In the case of the Bunker node. Replicator Log protection is set to **Off**, by default. Thus, if the Primary RLINK overflows due to the Bunker RLINK, then this RLINK is detached.

The **Override** option enables log protection. If the Secondary node is still connected and the Replicator Log is about to overflow then the writes are stalled until a predetermined amount of space, that is, 5% or 20 MB (whichever is lesser) becomes available in the Replicator Log.

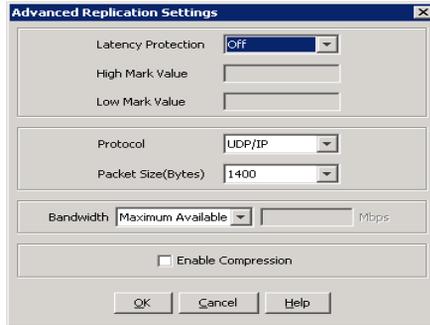
If the Secondary becomes inactive due to disconnection or administrative action then Replicator Log protection is disabled, and the Replicator Log overflows.

The **Fail** option enables log protection. If the log is about to overflow the writes are stalled until a predetermined amount of space, that is, 5% or 20 MB (whichever is lesser) becomes available in the Replicator Log. If the connection between Primary and Secondary RVG is broken, then, any new writes to the Primary RVG are failed.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Primary RLINK Name   | This option enables you to specify a Primary RLINK name of your choice. If you do not specify any name then VVR assigns a default name.   |
| Secondary RLINK Name | This option enables you to specify a Secondary RLINK name of your choice. If you do not specify any name then VVR assigns a default name. |

Click **Next** to start replication with the default settings.

- 15 Click **Advanced** to specify advanced replication settings. Edit the replication settings for a secondary host as needed.



**Latency protection** Determines the extent of stalling write operations on the primary site to allow the secondary site to “catch up” with the updates before new write operations can occur.

- **Off** is the default option and disables latency protection.
- **Fail** enables latency protection. If the number of outstanding write operations reaches the **High Mark Value** (described below), and the secondary site is connected, VVR stalls the subsequent write operations until the number of outstanding write operations is lowered to the **Low Mark Value** (described below). If the secondary site is disconnected, the subsequent write operations fail.
- **Override** enables latency protection. This option resembles the Off option when the secondary site is disconnected, and the Fail option when the secondary site is connected.

**Caution:** Throttling of write operations affects application performance on the primary site; use this protection only when necessary according to replication throughput and application write patterns.

**High Mark Value** Is enabled only when either the Override or Fail latency protection option is selected. This value triggers the stalling of write operations and specifies the maximum number of pending updates on the Replicator Log waiting for replication to the secondary site. The default value is 10000, the maximum number of updates allowed in a Replicator Log.

**Low Mark Value** Is enabled only when either the Override or Fail latency protection options is selected. After reaching the High Mark Value, write operations on the Replicator Log are stalled until the number of pending updates drops to an acceptable point at which the secondary site can “catch up” to the activity on the primary site; this acceptable point is determined by the Low Mark Value. The default value is 9950.

**Caution:** When determining the high mark and low mark values for latency protection, select a range that is sufficient but not too large to prevent long durations of throttling for write operations.

**Protocol** UDP/IP is the default protocol for replication.

**Packet Size** Updates to the host on the secondary site are sent in packets; the default size 1400 bytes. The option to select the packet size is enabled only when UDP/IP protocol is selected.

**Bandwidth** By default, VVR uses the maximum available bandwidth. To control the bandwidth used, specify the bandwidth limit in Mbps.

**Enable Compression** Enable this checkbox if you want to enable Compression for the secondary host.

Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

16 Click **Next**.

17 On the **Start Replication** page, select **Start Replication**.

**Synchronize Automatically** If virtual IPs have been created, select the **Synchronize Automatically** option, which is the default recommended for initial setup to start synchronization of Secondary and start replication immediately.

If the virtual IPs for replication are not yet created, automatic synchronization remains paused and resumes after the Replication Service Group is created and brought online.

When this option is selected, VVR by default performs intelligent synchronization to replicate only those blocks on a volume that are being used by the file system. If required, you can disable intelligent synchronization.

**Note:** Intelligent synchronization is applicable only to volumes with the NTFS file systems and not to raw volumes or volumes with FAT/FAT32 file systems.

Synchronize from  
Checkpoint

If you want to use this method, then you must first create a checkpoint.

If you have considerable amount of data on the Primary data volumes, then you may first want to synchronize the secondary for existing data using the backup-restore method with checkpoint. After the restore is complete, use the Synchronize from Checkpoint option to start replication from checkpoint to synchronize the secondary with the writes that happened when backup-restore was in progress.

For information on synchronizing from checkpoints, refer *Veritas Storage Foundation™ Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide*.

- To add the secondary without starting replication, deselect the **Start Replication** option. You can start replication later by using the **Start Replication** option from the Secondary RVG right-click menu. Click **Next** to display the Summary page.
- 18** Review the information.  
Click **Back** to change any information you had specified and click **Finish** to add the secondary host to the RDS and exit the wizard.

# Configuring a hybrid RVG service group for replication

Create and configure a hybrid Replicated Volume Group (RVG) service group for replication.

The RVG service group is hybrid because it behaves as a failover service group within a zone and as a parallel service group between zones.

For additional information about service group types, see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Configure the RVG service group's resources manually by copying and modifying components of the SQL Server service group. Then create new RVG resources and bring them online.

[Table 9-2](#) shows the resources in the hybrid RVG service group for replication.

**Table 9-2** Replication service group resources

Resource	Description
IP	IP address for replication
NIC	Associated NIC for this IP
VMDg for the system files disk group	Disk group with SQL system files
VvrRvg for the system files disk group	Replicated volume group with SQL system files
VMDg for the user-defined database disk group	Disk group with SQL user-defined files
VvrRvg for the user-defined database disk group	Replicated volume group with SQL user-defined files

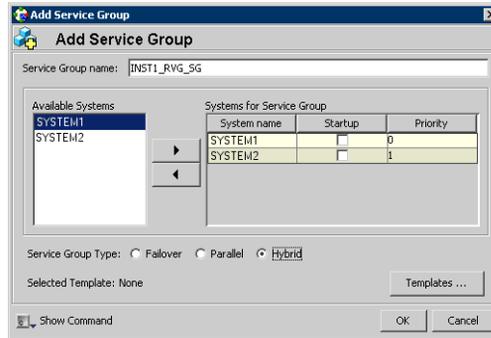
## Creating the RVG service group

Create a hybrid replicated volume (RVG) service group, to contain the resources for replication.

### To create a hybrid RVG service group

- 1 From VCS Cluster Manager (Java Console), log on to the cluster.
- 2 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, right-click the cluster in the left pane and select **Add Service Group**.

- 3 In the **Add Service Group** window, specify the following:



- Enter a name for the service group. Make sure the service group name is in uppercase.  
For example, enter INST1\_RVG\_SG.
- Select the systems in the primary zone (zone 0) and click the right arrow to add them to the service group.
- Select **Hybrid**.
- Click **OK**.

## Configuring the RVG service group for RDC replication

Configure the RVG service group's resources manually for RVG by completing the following tasks:

- [Configuring the IP and NIC resources](#)  
Copy IP and NIC resources of the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG), paste and modify them for the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- [Configuring the VMDg resources](#) and [Configuring the VMDg resources for the disk group for the user-defined database](#)  
Copy the VMDg resources for the disk groups in the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG), paste and modify them for the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- [Adding the VVR RVG resources for the disk groups](#)  
Create the VVR RVG resources for the disk groups and enter the attributes for each of the disk groups and the replication IP address.
- [Linking the VVR RVG resources to establish dependencies](#)  
Link the VVR RVG resources to establish the dependencies between the VMDg resources, the IP resource for replication, and the VVR RVG

resources for the disk groups. Configure the RVG service group's VMDg resources to point to the disk groups that contain the RVGs.

- **Deleting the VMDg resource from the SQL Server service group**  
 Delete the VMDg resources from the SQL Server service group, because they depend on the replication and were configured in the RVG service group.

## Configuring the IP and NIC resources

Configure the following resources and attributes for the IP and NIC.

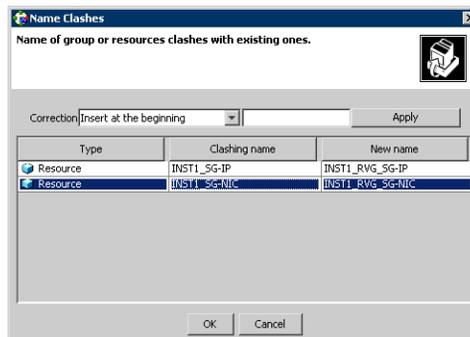
Table 9-3 shows the resource attributes to modify.

**Table 9-3** IP and NIC resources

Resource	Attributes to Modify
IP	Address
NIC	(none)

### To create the IP resource and NIC resource

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane.
- 2 On the Resources tab, right-click the IP resource (INST1\_SG-IP), and click **Copy > Self and Child Nodes**.
- 3 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 4 On the Resources tab, right-click in the blank resource display area and click **Paste**.
- 5 In the Name Clashes window, change the names of the IP and NIC resources for the RVG service group.



6 Click **OK**.

**To modify the IP resource and NIC**

- 1 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the IP resource (INST1\_RVG\_SG-IP) and select **View > Properties View**.
- 2 In the Properties View window, for the **Address** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 3 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the VVR IP address for the Primary Zone as the scalar value.
- 4 Close the Properties View window.

**To enable the IP resource and NIC**

- 1 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the IP resource (INST1\_RVG\_SG-IP) and select **Enabled**.
- 2 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the NIC resource (INST1\_RVG\_SG-NIC) and select **Enabled**.

### Configuring the VMDg resources

You create the VMDg resource in the RVG service group by copying it from the SQL Server service group and renaming it.

You then clear the DGGuid attribute for the new VMDg. You repeat these procedures for any additional VMDg resources that you want to create for replication.

You modify the attributes of the MountV resources in the SQL Server service group for the new VMDg in the RVG service group.

---

**Note:** The MountV resources correspond to the volumes that you are configuring for replication. The table shows an example configuration. You may have additional volumes you want to include for replication.

---

Table 9-4 shows the MountV resources and attributes to configure for the example configuration.

**Table 9-4** MountV resources

Resource	Attributes to Modify
MountV (for the SQL Server system volume)	VMDg Resource Name Volume Name

**Table 9-4** MountV resources

Resource	Attributes to Modify
MountV (for the registry volume)	VMDg Resource Name Volume Name
MountV (for the SQL Server user-defined database log)	VMDg Resource Name Volume Name
MountV for the SQL Server user-defined database)	VMDg Resource Name Volume Name

**To create the VMDg resource in the RVG service group**

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane.
- 2 On the Resources tab, right-click the VMDg resource for the disk group that you want to configure for the RVG and click **Copy > Self**.  
For example, right-click INST1\_SG-VMDg.
- 3 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 4 On the Resources tab, right-click in the blank resource display area and click **Paste**.
- 5 In the Name Clashes window, change the name of the VMDg resource for the RVG service group.  
For example change INST1\_SG-VMDg to INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg.
- 6 Click **OK**.

**To clear the DGGuid attribute for the new VMDg**

- 1 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the new VMDg resource.
- 2 In the same Properties View window, for the **DGGuid** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 3 In the Edit Attribute window, clear the scalar value for the **DGGuid** attribute.
- 4 Close the Properties View window.

**To modify the MountV resources in the SQL Server service group**

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane.

- 2 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the MountV resource for the SQL Server system data files (INST1\_SG-MountV) and select **View > Properties View**.
- 3 In the Properties View window, verify that the **Volume Name** attribute is the SQL Server system data files (INST1\_DATA\_FILES).
- 4 In the same Properties View window, for the **VMDg Resource Name** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 5 In the Edit Attribute window, modify the **VMDGResName** scalar value to be the VMDg resource that was just created.  
For example INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg.
- 6 Close the Properties View window.
- 7 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the MountV resource for the registry volume (INST1\_SG-MountV-1) and select **View > Properties View**.
- 8 In the Properties View window, verify that the **Volume Name** attribute is the registry volume (INST1\_REGREP\_VOL).
- 9 In the same Properties View window, for the **VMDg Resource Name** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 10 In the Edit Attribute window, modify the **VMDGResName** scalar value to be the VMDg resource that was just created.  
For example INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg.
- 11 Close the Properties View window.

#### To enable the VMDg resource

- 1 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 2 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the VMDg resource (INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg) and select **Enabled**.

### Configuring the VMDg resources for the disk group for the user-defined database

Repeat the VMDg and MountV configuration for any additional disk group you may have created for a user-defined database.

This is an example configuration. You should modify these steps as necessary to match the disk groups and volumes you want to include in replication.

#### To create the VMDg resource for the disk group for the user-defined database

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane.

- 2 On the Resources tab, right-click the VMDg resource for the disk group, with SQL user-defined files (INST1\_SG-VMDg-1), and click **Copy > Self**.
- 3 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 4 On the Resources tab, right-click in the blank resource display area and click **Paste**.
- 5 In the Name Clashes window, change the name of the VMDg resource for the RVG service group.  
For example, change it to INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg-1.
- 6 Click **OK**.

#### To modify the MountV resources in the SQL Server service group

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane.
- 2 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the MountV resource for the SQL Server user-defined log (INST1\_SG-MountV-2) and select **View > Properties View**.
- 3 In the Properties View window, verify that the **Volume Name** attribute is the SQL Server user-defined log (INST1\_DB1\_LOG).
- 4 In the same Properties View window, for the **VMDg Resource Name** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 5 In the Edit Attribute window, modify the **VMDGResName** scalar value to be the VMDg resource that was just created.  
For example INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg-1.
- 6 Close the Properties View window.
- 7 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the MountV resource for the SQL Server user-defined database (INST1\_SG-MountV-3) and select **View > Properties View**.
- 8 In the Properties View window, verify that the **Volume Name** attribute is the SQL Server user-defined database (INST1\_DB1\_VOL).
- 9 In the same Properties View window, for the **VMDg Resource Name** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 10 In the Edit Attribute window, modify the **VMDGResName** scalar value to be the VMDg resource that was just created.  
For example INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg.
- 11 Close the Properties View window.

**To enable the VMDg resource**

- 1 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 2 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the VMDg resource (INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg-1) and select **Enabled**.

**Adding the VVR RVG resources for the disk groups**

Add a VVR RVG resource for each disk group that you want to replicate.

For the example configuration, you add a VVR RVG resource for the disk group for the SQL system files. You then add a VVR RVG resource for the disk group for the SQL user-defined database files.

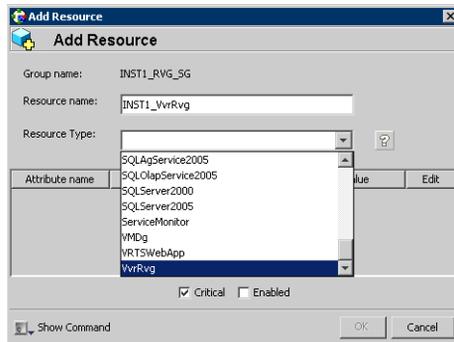
Table 9-5 shows the attributes you must configure in the RVG service group for the VvrRvg resource.

**Table 9-5** VvrRvg resources

Resource	Attributes to Modify
VvrRvg	VMDgResName IPResName

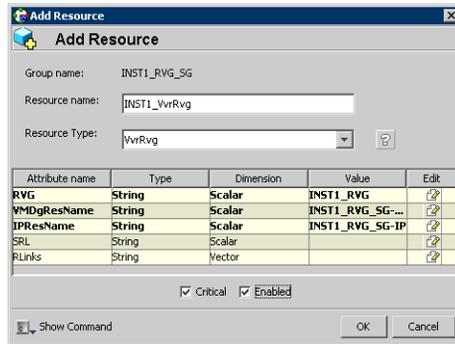
**To create the VVR RVG resource for a disk group containing the system files**

- 1 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG). Right-click it and select **Add Resource**.
- 2 In the Add Resource window, specify the following:



- Enter a resource name for the VVR RVG resource. For example, enter INST1-VvrRvg.
- In the Resource Type list, select **VvrRvg**.

- 3 In the Add Resource window the attributes appear. For the **RVG** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of the RVG group that is being managed.  
 For example, enter INST1\_RVG.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 In the Add Resource window, for the **VMDGResName** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 7 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of disk group containing the RVG.  
 For example, for the system files disk group, enter INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 In the Add Resource window, for the **IPResName** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 10 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of the IP resource managing the IP address for replication.  
 For example, enter INST1\_RVG\_SG-IP.
- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 In the Add Resource window, verify that the attributes have been modified:

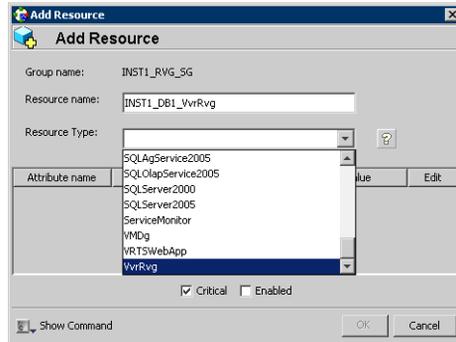


- 13 Click **OK**.

**To create the VVR RVG resource for the disk group containing the user-defined database files**

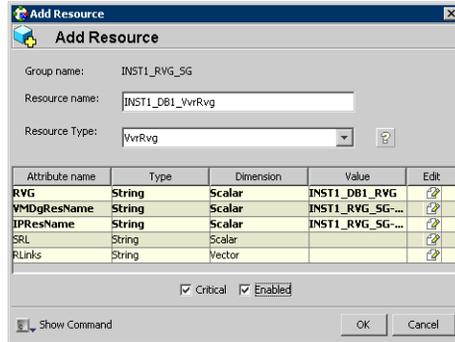
- 1 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG). Right-click it and select **Add Resource**.

- 2 In the Add Resource window, specify the following:



- Enter a resource name for the VVR RVG resource.  
For example, enter INST1-DB1-VvrRvg.
  - In the Resource Type list, select **VvrRvg**.
- 3 In the Add Resource window the attributes appear. For the **RVG** attribute, click **Edit**.
  - 4 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of the RVG group that is being managed.  
For example INST1\_DB1\_RVG.
  - 5 Click **OK**.
  - 6 In the Add Resource window, for the **VMDGResName** attribute, click **Edit**.
  - 7 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of disk group containing the RVG.  
For example INST1\_RVG\_SG-VMDg-1.
  - 8 Click **OK**.
  - 9 In the Add Resource window, for the **IPResName** attribute, click **Edit**.
  - 10 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of the IP resource managing the IP address for replication.  
For example, enter INST1\_RVG\_SG-IP.  
In this example both disk groups are using the same IP resource for replication.
  - 11 Click **OK**.

12 In the Add Resource window, verify that the attributes have been modified:



13 Click **OK**.

### Linking the VVR RVG resources to establish dependencies

In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, link the resources in the VVR RVG service group to establish the dependencies between the resources.

You start from the top parent and link the parent and child resources as shown in [Table 9-6](#).

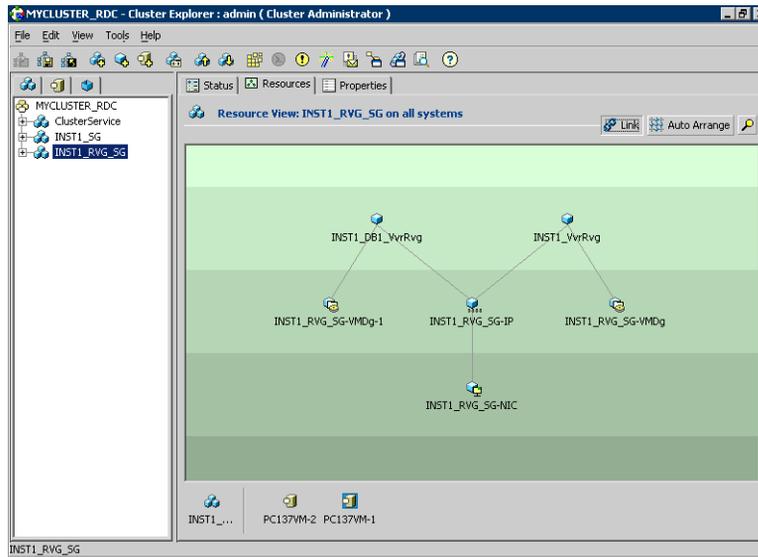
**Table 9-6** Dependencies for VVR RVG resources for RDC

Parent	Child
INST1_VvrRvg	The IP for replication, for example INST1_RVG_SG-IP
INST1_VvrRvg	The VMDg for the SQL system files For example, INST1_RVG_SG-VMDg
INST1_DB1_VvrRvg	The IP for replication, for example INST1_RVG_SG-IP
INST1_DB1_VvrRvg	The VMDg for the SQL user-defined database files For example INST1_RVG_SG-VMDg-1

#### To link the VVR RVG resources

- 1 In the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 2 Click the **Link** button in the right pane.
- 3 Click the parent resource, for example INST1\_DB1\_VvrRvg.
- 4 Click the child resource, for example INST1\_RVG\_SG-IP.
- 5 When prompted to confirm, click **OK**.

6 Repeat these steps to link all the RVG resources:



Notice that when you enable a resource and the state of the entity which it is monitoring is online, the corresponding VCS agent reports status for that resource as online. You do not have to bring the resource online manually.

## Deleting the VMDg resource from the SQL Server service group

The VMDg resources must now be manually deleted from the SQL Server service group, because they depend on replication and were configured in the RVG service group.

### To delete the VMDg Resources from the SQL Server service group

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) from the left pane.
- 2 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the VMDg resource for the system files disk group (INST1\_SG-VMDg) and select **Delete**.
- 3 Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to delete it (even if it is online).
- 4 In the Resources tab display area, right-click the VMDg resource for the user-defined database disk group (INST1\_SG-VMDg-1) and select **Delete**.
- 5 Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to delete it (even if it is online).

## Configuring the RVGPrimary resources

Add resources of type RVGPrimary to the SQL Server service group for each of the SQL Server disk groups (system and user-defined) and configure the attributes.

Set the value of the RvgResourceName attribute to the name of the RVG resource for the RVGPrimary agent.

[Table 9-7](#) shows the RVG Primary resources and attributes you must configure in the SQL Server service group for the sample configuration.

**Table 9-7** RVG Primary resources

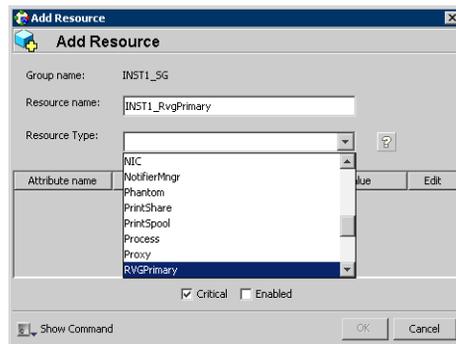
Resource	Attributes to Modify
RVGPrimary (for the disk group for the SQL system files)	RvgResourceName
RVGPrimary (for the disk group for the SQL user-defined database files)	RvgResourceName

## Creating the RVG Primary resources

For all disk groups, create an RVG Primary resource for replication.

**To create the RVG Primary resource for the SQL Server system disk group**

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, right-click the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane, and select **Add Resource**.
- 2 In the Add Resource window, specify the following:



- Enter a resource name for the RVG Primary resource for the SQL Server system files disk group.

For example, enter INST1\_RvgPrimary.

- Select **RVGPrimary** as the Resource Type.
- 3 In the Add Resource window the attributes appear. For the **RvgResourceName** attribute, click **Edit**.
  - 4 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of the VVR RVG resource, for example INST1\_VvrRvg and click **OK**.
  - 5 If desired, set the AutoTakeover and AutoResync attributes from their defaults.  
See the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information about the RVG Primary agent.
  - 6 Verify that **Critical** and **Enabled** are both checked.
  - 7 Click **OK**.

#### To create the RVG Primary resource for the SQL Server user-defined database disk group

- 1 In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, right-click the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) in the left pane, and select **Add Resource**.
- 2 In the Add Resource window, specify the following:
  - Enter a resource name for the RVG Primary resource for the SQL Server user-defined database disk group.  
For example, enter INST1\_DB1\_RvgPrimary.
  - Select **RVGPrimary** as the Resource Type.
- 3 In the Add Resource window the attributes appear. For the **RvgResourceName** attribute, click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Edit Attribute window, enter the name of the VVR RVG resource, for example INST1\_DB1\_VvrRvg and click **OK**.
- 5 If desired, set the AutoTakeover and AutoResync attributes from their defaults.
- 6 Verify that **Critical** and **Enabled** are both checked.
- 7 Click **OK**.

#### Linking the RVG Primary resources to establish dependencies

In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, link the resources in the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) to establish the dependencies between the resources for replication.

You start from the top parent and link the parent and child resources as shown in [Table 9-8](#).

**Table 9-8** Dependencies for the RVG Primary resources for RDC

Parent	Child
INST1_SG-MountV	INST1_RvgPrimary
INST1_SG-MountV-1	INST1_RvgPrimary
INST1_SG-MountV-2	INST1_DB1_RvgPrimary
INST1_SG-MountV-3	INST1_DB1_RvgPrimary

**To link the RVG Primary resources**

- 1 In the left pane, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG).
- 2 Click the **Link** button in the right pane.
- 3 Click the parent resource.  
For example INST1\_SG-MountV.
- 4 Click the child resource.  
For example INST1\_RvgPrimary.
- 5 When prompted to confirm, click **OK**.
- 6 Repeat these steps to link all the RVG Primary resources.

**Bringing the RVG Primary resources online**

In the VCS Cluster Explorer window, bring the RVG Primary resources in the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG) online on the first node in the primary zone.

**To bring the RVG Primary resources online**

- 1 In the left pane, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG).
- 2 In the right pane on the Resources tab, right-click the first RVG Primary resource (INST1\_RvgPrimary) and select **Online > SYSTEM1**.
- 3 In the right pane on the Resources tab, right click the second RVG Primary resource (INST1\_DB1\_RvgPrimary) and select **Online > SYSTEM1**.

## Configuring the primary system zone for the RVG

In the RVG service group, set up systems in the primary zone (zone 0) to specify that initial failover occurs to systems within the primary zone for the RVG service group.

### To configure the primary system zone for the RVG service group

- 1 From VCS Cluster Explorer, in the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 2 In the right pane, select the Properties tab.
- 3 In the Properties pane, click the button **Show All Attributes**.
- 4 In the Attributes View, scroll down and select the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 5 Click the **Edit** icon for the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 6 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, click the plus sign and enter the systems and the zone number (zone 0) for the primary zone.
- 7 Click **OK**.

## Setting a dependency between the service groups

The RVG service group must be online on both the primary and secondary zones. However, if a failover occurs from one node to another within the same zone, the RVG service group must fail over along with the application service group.

To ensure that the SQL Server service group and the RVG service group fail over and switch together, set up an online local hard dependency from the RVG service group to the SQL Server service group.

The SQL service group (for example, INST1\_SG) is dependent on the replication service group (for example, INST1\_RVG\_GRP).

### To set up an online local hard dependency

- 1 From VCS Cluster Explorer, in the left pane, select the cluster (MYCLUSTER).
- 2 In the right pane, select the **Service Groups** tab.
- 3 Click the **Link** button to create a dependency between service groups.
- 4 Click the application service group (parent service group).  
For example, click the SQL Server service group INST1\_SG.
- 5 Click the RVG service group (the child resource).  
For example, click the RVG service group INST1\_RVG\_SG.

6 In the **Link Service Groups** window, specify the following:



- Select the Relationship of **online local**.
- Select the Dependency Type of **hard**.
- Click **OK**.

## Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RDC

Configuration of the systems in the Primary Zone (zone 0) is complete. The nodes in the Secondary Zone (zone 1) can now be added to the RDC configuration.

See the following topics:

- [“Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server 2000 or 2005 service group”](#) on page 235
- [“Configuring secondary zone nodes in the RVG service group”](#) on page 233
- [“Configuring the IP resources for failover”](#) on page 234

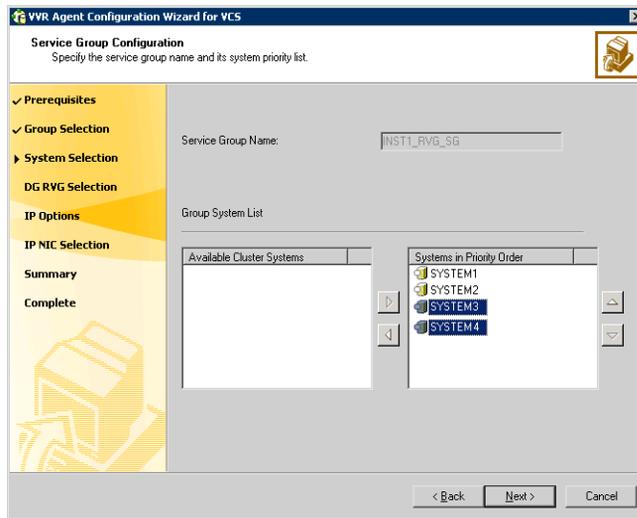
## Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the RVG service group

Use the Volume Replicator Agent Configuration Wizard to add the nodes from the secondary zone to the RVG.

To add the nodes from the secondary zone to the RVG

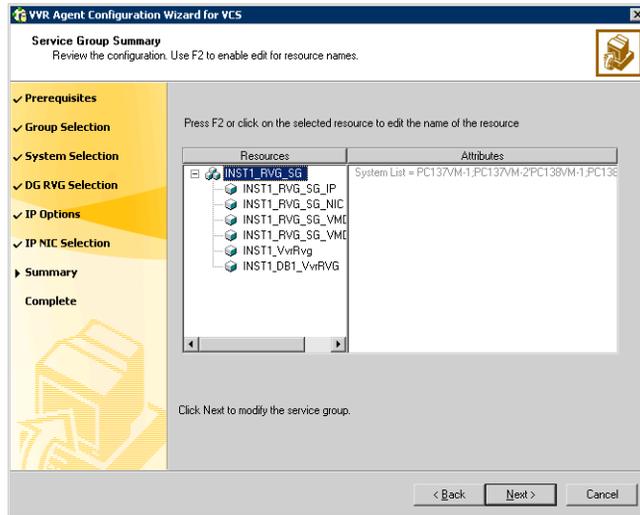
- 1 From the active node of the cluster in the primary zone, click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > Volume Replicator Agent Configuration Wizard** to launch the configuration wizard.
- 2 Read and verify the requirements on the Welcome page, and click **Next**.
- 3 In the Wizard Options panel, specify the following:

- Click **Modify an existing replication service group**. The existing replication service group is selected, by default.
  - Click **Next**.
- 4 If a VCS notice message appears, asking if you want to continue, click **Yes**.
  - 5 Specify the system priority list as follows:



- In the Available Cluster Systems box, click the nodes in the secondary zone to add to the service group, and click the right-arrow icon to move the nodes to the service group's system list.
  - To remove a node from the service group's system list, click the node in the Systems in Priority Order box, and click the left arrow icon.
  - To change the priority of a node in the system list, click the node in the Systems in Priority Order box, then click the up and down arrow icons. The node at the top of the list has the highest priority.
  - Click **Next**.
- 6 If a message appears, indicating that the configuration will be changed from Read Only to Read/Write, click **Yes** to continue.
  - 7 Review the Disk Group and Replicated Volume Group Configuration and click **Next**.
  - 8 In the IP Resource Options panel, select **Modify IP resource** and click **Next**.
  - 9 If a VCS error appears, click **OK**.
  - 10 In the Network Configuration panel, verify that the selected adapters are correct and click **Next**.

11 Review the summary of the service group configuration as follows:



- The Resources box lists the configured resources. Click a resource to view its attributes and their configured values in the Attributes box.
- Click **Next** to modify the replication service group.

12 When prompted, click **Yes** to modify the service group.

13 Click **Finish**.

## Configuring secondary zone nodes in the RVG service group

Specify zone 1 for the nodes in the secondary zone.

### To specify the secondary zone for the nodes in the RVG service group

- 1 From VCS Cluster Explorer, in the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 2 In the right pane, select the **Properties** tab.
- 3 In the Properties pane, click the button **Show All Attributes**.
- 4 In the Attributes View, scroll down and select the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 5 Click the **Edit** icon for the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 6 If a message appears indicating that the configuration be changed to read/write, click **Yes**.
- 7 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, click the plus sign and enter the systems and the zone number (zone 1) for the secondary zone.

- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Close the Attributes View window.

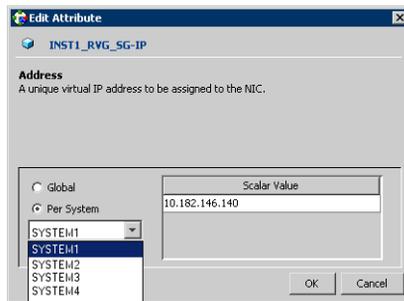
## Configuring the IP resources for failover

Modify the IP resources in the RVG service group to ensure the desired failover behavior in the RDC.

In the event of a system or SQL campus cluster failure, VCS attempts to fail over the SQL Server service group to another system within the same RDC system zone. However, in the event that VCS fails to find a failover target node within the primary zone, VCS switches the service group to a node in the current secondary system zone.

### To modify the IP resources in the RVG service group

- 1 From VCS Cluster Explorer, in the left pane, select the RVG service group (INST1\_RVG\_SG).
- 2 In the right pane, select the Resources tab.
- 3 Right-click the RVG IP resource (INST1\_RVG\_SG-IP) and select **View > Properties View**.
- 4 In the Edit Attributes window, edit the Address attribute.



- Select **Per System**.
- Select the first node in the primary zone and enter the virtual IP address for the primary zone.
- Select the second node in the primary zone and enter the virtual IP address for the primary zone (the same IP address as the first node).
- Repeat for all nodes in the primary zone.
- Select the first node in the secondary zone (SYSTEM3) and enter the virtual IP address for the secondary zone.

- Select the second node in the secondary zone and enter the virtual IP address for the secondary zone (the same IP address as the first node in the secondary zone).
  - Repeat for all nodes in the secondary zone.
  - Click **OK**.
- 5 In the Properties View window, verify that all nodes in the primary zone have the same IP address. Also verify that all nodes in the secondary zone have the same IP address, that is different from the IP address for the primary zone.



- 6 Close the Properties View window.
- 7 Since this is the final task in configuring the RVG service group for the primary and secondary zones, you can now bring the RVG service group online in both the primary and secondary zones.

## Adding the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server 2000 or 2005 service group

Use the SQL Server Agent Configuration Wizard to add the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server service group.

To add the nodes from the secondary zone to the SQL Server service group

- 1 Select **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > SQL Configuration Wizard**.
- 2 In the Select Configuration Option panel, select **MS SQL Server - Service Group Configuration**. Select **Edit**, and click **Next**.
- 3 Verify that you have met the prerequisites listed and click **Next**.
- 4 Select the service group to be modified (INST1\_SG) and click **Next**.

- 5 If a VCS notice message appears indicating that resources are online, click **Yes** to continue.
- 6 On the Service Group Configuration panel, select the nodes in the secondary zone, use the arrow button to move them from Available Cluster Systems to Systems in Priority Order.  
To change the priority of a system in the Systems in Priority Order list, select the system and click the up and down arrow icons. Arrange the systems in priority order in as failover targets for the group. The server that needs to come online first must be at the top of the list followed by the next one that will be brought online.  
This set of nodes selected for the SQL Server service group must be the same as the nodes selected for the RVG service group. Ensure that the nodes are also in the same priority order.
- 7 Click **Next**.
- 8 On the SQL Server Instance Selection panel, click **Next**.
- 9 The User Databases List panel summarizes the databases for this instance of SQL. Click **Next**.
- 10 On the Detail Monitoring Configuration panel, clear the box in the SQL Instance List to disable monitoring, as required. Detailed monitoring is not necessary. Click **Next**.
- 11 On the Registry Replication Path panel, click **Next**.
- 12 On the Virtual Server Configuration panel, verify that the public adapter is used on each system and click **Next**.
- 13 In the Service Group Summary, review the service group configuration and click **Next**.
- 14 A message appears if the configuration is currently in the Read Only mode. Click **Yes** to make the configuration read and write enabled. The wizard validates the configuration and modifies it.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

## Configuring the zones in the SQL Server service group

Specify zone 1 for the nodes in the secondary zone.

**To specify the secondary zone for the nodes in the SQL Server service group**

- 1 From VCS Cluster Explorer, in the left pane, select the SQL Server service group (INST1\_SG).
- 2 In the right pane, select the **Properties** tab.

- 3 In the Properties pane, click the button **Show All Attributes**.
- 4 In the Attributes View, scroll down and select the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 5 Click the **Edit** icon for the **SystemZones** attribute.
- 6 If a message appears indicating that the configuration be changed to read/write, click **Yes**.
- 7 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, click the plus sign and enter the systems and the zone number (zone 1) for the secondary zone.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Close the Attributes View window.

## Verifying the RDC configuration

After completing all the configuration tasks for the primary and secondary zones, you can bring the service group online, then verify the configuration.

Perform the following tasks:

- [Bringing the service group online](#)
- [Switching online nodes](#)

### Bringing the service group online

After completing all configuration, ensure that the RVG service group is online in both the primary and secondary zone. Then you can bring the SQL service group online in the primary zone.

#### To bring the SQL service group online

- 1 From VCS Cluster Explorer, in the left pane, right-click the SQL Server service group.
- 2 Click **Online**.

### Switching online nodes

Failover simulation is an important part of configuration testing. Test the failover by switching online nodes.

The RVG service group is online in both the primary and secondary zone. However, within a zone, if more than node is configured, the RVG service group should fail over with the application service group.

---

**Note:** This should never be tested on systems with live data. A reliable and tested backup should be available. A tested backup means that it has been tested successfully by a restore.

---

Switch the application service group between nodes using Veritas Cluster Manager (Java Console). When you complete the procedure, you will see the online system role shift from one system to another.

If you enter the system name manually from the Java Console, specify the name in upper case.

#### To switch online nodes

- 1 In the Veritas Cluster Manager (Java Console), click the cluster in the configuration tree, and click the Service Groups tab.
- 2 Switch the service group as follows:
  - Right-click the service group icon in the view panel.
  - Click **Switch To**, and click the appropriate node from the menu.
  - In the dialog box, click **Yes**. The service group you selected is taken offline on the original node and brought online on the node you selected.

If there is more than one service group, you must repeat this step until all the service groups are switched.
- 3 Verify that the service group is online on the node you selected.
- 4 To move all the resources back to the original node, repeat step 2 for each of the service groups.

## Additional instructions for GCO disaster recovery

After completing the tasks for setting up a replicated data cluster for SQL Server, you can optionally create a secondary site for wide area disaster recovery using the SFW HA Global Cluster option (GCO).

With this option, if a disaster affects a local or metropolitan area, data and critical services are failed over to a site hundreds or thousands of miles away.

To configure disaster recovery using a secondary site, you must install the SFW HA Global Cluster Option on all nodes on the primary (replicated data cluster) site cluster, as well as the secondary (DR) site cluster. GCO configuration also requires a static IP address available for each site.

You can use the Disaster Recovery (DR) wizard when setting up the secondary site. The secondary site is not configured as a replicated data cluster. There can be only one replicated data cluster in the DR environment.

The DR wizard does the following tasks:

- Clones the storage
- Clones the application service group
- Sets up VVR replication for the secondary site
- Configures the primary and secondary site clusters as global clusters

See “[Disaster recovery configuration](#)” on page 49.



# Configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Tasks for configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server](#)
- [Guidelines for installing SFW HA and configuring the cluster on the secondary site](#)
- [Verifying your primary site configuration](#)
- [Setting up your replication environment](#)
- [Assigning user privileges \(secure clusters only\)](#)
- [Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard](#)
- [Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard \(VVR replication option\)](#)
- [Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard \(array-based replication\)](#)
- [Installing and configuring SQL Server on the secondary site](#)
- [Cloning the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site](#)
- [Configuring replication and global clustering](#)
- [Verifying the disaster recovery configuration](#)
- [Establishing secure communication within the global cluster \(optional\)](#)
- [Adding multiple DR sites \(optional\)](#)
- [Recovery procedures for service group dependencies](#)

# Tasks for configuring disaster recovery for SQL Server

After setting up an SFW HA high availability environment for SQL on a primary site, you can create a secondary or “failover” site for disaster recovery.

The Disaster Recovery (DR) wizard helps you to clone the storage and service group configuration from the primary site to the secondary site. You can install the application on the secondary site during the DR wizard workflow.

The DR wizard also helps you set up replication and the global clustering (GCO option). You can choose to configure replication using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) or an agent-supported array-based hardware replication. The DR wizard can configure required options for the VCS agents for EMC SRDF and for Hitachi TrueCopy. To use the wizard with any other agent-supported array-based replication, you must complete configuring global clustering with the wizard before configuring replication on the array.

The DR wizard is available from the Solutions Configuration Center. Symantec recommends using the Solutions Configuration Center as a guide for installing and configuring disaster recovery.

**Table 10-1** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery

Action	Description
Install SFW HA and configure the cluster on the secondary site	<p><b>Caution:</b> Ensure that the name you assign to the secondary site cluster is different from the name assigned to the primary site cluster.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Guidelines for installing SFW HA and configuring the cluster on the secondary site”</a> on page 246.</p>
Verify that SQL Server has been configured for high availability at the primary site	<p>Verify that SQL has been configured for high availability at the primary site and that the service groups are online</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Verifying your primary site configuration”</a> on page 247.</p>
Set up the replication prerequisites	<p>Ensure that replication prerequisites for your selected method of replication are met before running the DR wizard</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting up security for VVR”</a> on page 248.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication”</a> on page 251.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication”</a> on page 252.</p>

**Table 10-1**      Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
(Secure cluster only) Assign user privileges	For a secure cluster only, assign user privileges  See <a href="#">“Assigning user privileges (secure clusters only)”</a> on page 255.
Start running the DR wizard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Review prerequisites for the DR wizard</li> <li>■ Start the DR wizard and make the initial selections required for each task: selecting a primary site system, the service group, the secondary site system, and the replication method</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard”</a> on page 256.
Clone the storage configuration (VVR replication only)	(VVR replication option)  Clone the storage configuration on the secondary site using the DR wizard  See <a href="#">“Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (VVR replication option)”</a> on page 260.
Create temporary storage for application installation (other replication methods)	(EMC SRDF, Hitachi TrueCopy, or GCO only replication option)  Use the DR wizard to create temporary storage for application installation on the secondary site  See <a href="#">“Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (array-based replication)”</a> on page 264.
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes for the system database are mounted on the first node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 155.  See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 153.

**Table 10-1** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Install and configure SQL Server on the failover node(s)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stop SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensure that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Clone the service group configuration	<p>Clone the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site using the DR wizard</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Cloning the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site”</a> on page 268.</p>
Configure replication and global clustering, or configure global clustering only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ (VVR replication) Use the wizard to configure replication and global clustering</li> <li>■ (EMC SRDF replication) Set up replication and then use the wizard to configure the SRDF resource and global clustering</li> <li>■ (Hitachi TrueCopy) Set up replication and then use the wizard to configure the HTC resource and global clustering</li> <li>■ (Other array-based replication) Use the wizard to configure global clustering, and then set up replication</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring replication and global clustering”</a> on page 272.</p>
Verify the disaster recover configuration	<p>Verify that the secondary site has been fully configured for disaster recovery</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Verifying the disaster recovery configuration”</a> on page 288.</p>
(Optional) Add secure communication	<p>Add secure communication between local clusters within the global cluster (optional task)</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Establishing secure communication within the global cluster (optional)”</a> on page 290.</p>
(Optional) Add additional DR sites	<p>Optionally, add additional DR sites to a VVR environment</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Adding multiple DR sites (optional)”</a> on page 292.</p>

**Table 10-1**      Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Handling service group dependencies after failover	<p>If your environment includes dependent service groups, review the considerations for bringing the service groups online after failover to the secondary site</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Recovery procedures for service group dependencies”</a> on page 293.</p>

## Guidelines for installing SFW HA and configuring the cluster on the secondary site

Use the following guidelines for installing SFW HA and configuring the cluster on the secondary site.

- Ensure that you have set up the components required to run a cluster. See “[Configuring the storage hardware and network](#)” on page 108.
- Ensure that when installing SFW HA you install the appropriate disaster recovery options at both the primary and secondary sites. Be sure to select the following installation options as appropriate for your environment:

Veritas Cluster Server Data-base Agent for SQL	Required to configure high availability for SQL Server.
Client	Required to install VCS Cluster Manager (Java console) and Veritas Enterprise Administrator console, which are used during configuring high availability. Also required to install the Solutions Configuration Center which provides information and wizards to assist configuration.
Global Cluster Option	Required for a disaster recovery configuration only.
Veritas Volume Replicator	If you plan to use VVR for replication, select the option to install VVR.
High Availability Hardware Replication Agents	If you plan to use hardware replication, select the appropriate hardware replication agent.

For more information see the *SFW HA Installation and Upgrade Guide*.

- Configure the cluster with the VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard (VCW). Ensure that the name you assign to the secondary site cluster is different from the name assigned to the primary site cluster. See “[Configuring the cluster](#)” on page 133.

---

**Note:** You do not need to configure the GCO option while configuring the cluster. This is done later using the Disaster Recovery wizard.

---

## Verifying your primary site configuration

Before you begin configuring disaster recovery, make sure that SQL Server has been configured for high availability at the primary site. If you have not yet configured SQL for high availability at the primary site, go to High Availability (HA) Configuration in the Solutions Configuration Center and follow the steps in the order shown.

See “[High availability \(HA\) configuration \(New Server\)](#)” on page 35.

See “[High availability \(HA\) configuration \(Existing Server\)](#)” on page 38.

To verify the configuration, use the Cluster Manager (Java console) on the primary site and check the status of the service group in the tree view. Verify that all the resources are online.

---

**Note:** If you are setting up a replicated data cluster at the primary site, use the replicated data cluster instructions rather than the high availability configuration steps in the Solutions Configuration Center. See “[VCS Replicated Data Cluster configuration](#)” on page 45.

---

## Setting up your replication environment

The DR wizard can assist you with setting up replication for the following methods of replication:

- Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR)
- EMC SRDF
- Hitachi TrueCopy

For array-based hardware replication, you can use any replication agent supported by Veritas Cluster Server. The DR wizard can help with configuring the methods listed above. If you choose a different replication method, you must run the wizard first to complete configuring global clustering; then afterwards, you configure replication separately.

See “[Configuring global clustering only](#)” on page 286.

Before configuring replication with the wizard, ensure that you set up the replication environment prerequisites.

Choose from the following topics, depending on which replication method you are using:

- “[Setting up security for VVR](#)” on page 248
- “[Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication](#)” on page 251

- [“Requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication”](#) on page 252

## Setting up security for VVR

If you are using Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) replication, you must configure the VxSAS service on all cluster nodes. For a disaster recovery environment, you configure the service on all nodes on both the primary and secondary sites.

Complete the following procedure to configure the VxSAS service for VVR.

The procedure has these prerequisites:

- You must be logged on with administrative privileges on the server for the wizard to be launched.
- The account you specify must have administrative and log-on as service privileges on all the specified hosts.
- Avoid specifying blank passwords. In a Windows Server environment, accounts with blank passwords are not supported for log-on service privileges.
- Make sure that the hosts on which you want to configure the VxSAS service are accessible from the local host.

---

**Note:** The VxSAS wizard will not be launched automatically after installing SFW or SFW HA. You must launch this wizard manually to complete the VVR security service configuration. For details on this required service, see *Veritas Storage Foundation Veritas Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide*.

---

### To configure the VxSAS service

- 1 To launch the wizard, select **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Configuration Wizards > VVR Security Service Configuration Wizard** or run `vxascfg.exe` from the command prompt of the required machine.  
Read the information provided on the Welcome page and click **Next**.
- 2 Complete the Account Information panel as follows:

Account name (domain\account)	Enter the administrative account name.
----------------------------------	--

Password	Specify a password.
----------	---------------------

If you have already configured the VxSAS service for one host that is intended to be a part of the RDS, make sure you specify the same username and password when configuring the VxSAS service on the other hosts.

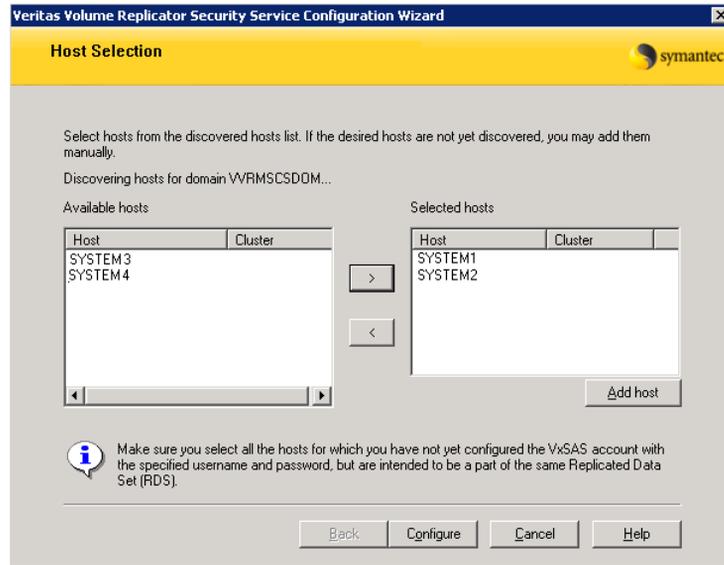
Click **Next**.

- 3 On the Domain Selection panel, select the domain to which the hosts that you want to configure belong:

Selecting domains	The Available domains pane lists all the domains that are present in the Windows network neighborhood.  Move the appropriate name from the Available domains list to the Selected domains list, either by double-clicking it or using the arrow button.
Adding a domain	If the domain name that you require is not displayed, click <b>Add domain</b> . This displays a dialog that allows you to specify the domain name. Click <b>Add</b> to add the name to the Selected domains list.

Click **Next**.

- 4 On the Host Selection panel, select the required hosts:



**Selecting hosts**

The Available hosts pane lists the hosts that are present in the specified domain.

Move the appropriate host from the Available hosts list to the Selected hosts list, either by double-clicking it or using the arrow button. Use the Shift key with the up or down arrow keys to select multiple hosts.

**Adding a host**

If the host name you require is not displayed, click **Add host**. In the Add Host dialog specify the required host name or IP in the **Host Name** field. Click **Add** to add the name to the Selected hosts list.

After you have selected a host name, the **Configure** button is enabled. Click **Configure** to proceed with configuring the VxSAS service.

- 5 After the configuration completes, the Configuration Results page displays whether or not the operation was successful. If the operation was not successful, the page displays the details on why the account update failed, along with the possible reasons for failure and recommendations on getting over the failure.  
Click **Back** to change any information you had provided earlier.
- 6 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

## Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication

The DR wizard configures the settings required for the VCS hardware replication agent for EMC SRDF. The wizard configures the required settings for the SRDF resource in the VCS application service group. The wizard also configures the Symm heartbeat. Optional resource settings are left in the default state.

For more information about the EMC SRDF agent functions and the configuration options, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for EMC SRDF, Configuration Guide*.

Before using the DR wizard, review the following topics:

- [“Software requirements for configuring EMC SRDF”](#) on page 251
- [“Replication requirements for EMC SRDF”](#) on page 251

### Software requirements for configuring EMC SRDF

The EMC SRDF agent supports SYMCLI versions that EMC recommends for the firmware on the array. The agent supports SRDF on all microcode levels on all Symmetrix arrays, provided that the host/HBA/array combination is in EMC's hardware compatibility list.

To use the DR wizard to configure the required agent settings for EMC SRDF, ensure that the following software requirements are met:

- The EMC Solutions Enabler is installed on all cluster nodes.
- The SYMCLI version that is installed supports the generation of XML output.
- The SYMCLI version and the microcode level support dynamic swapping.
- The VCS EMC SRDF agent is installed on all cluster nodes.

### Replication requirements for EMC SRDF

Before it performs any tasks, the wizard validates the array configuration as follows:

- On the primary site, the wizard verifies that no devices are RDF2.
- On the secondary site, the wizard verifies that no devices are RDF1.

Otherwise, the wizard displays an invalid configuration message and is unable to proceed.

The DR wizard does not start or stop replication. Array replication configuration is not a prerequisite for the wizard to perform storage cloning or service group cloning.

After the service group cloning task is complete, the DR wizard displays a screen describing the following replication requirements:

- All disks in SFW disk groups must belong to the same device group.
- The device group must not span more than one array (no composite device groups).
- A device group can contain one or more disk groups.
- Dynamic swap must be enabled on both sites.
- On the primary site:
  - All devices must be RDF1 and part of an RDF1 device group.
  - Devices must have write access.
- On the secondary site:
  - All devices must be RDF2 and part of an RDF2 device group.
  - Write access must be disabled.

It is recommended that you ensure that these requirements are met before proceeding with the wizard. The wizard then validates the array replication configuration.

If replication is configured correctly, the wizard populates the resource configuration screen with the required replication settings for the SRDF resource.

If the replication configuration does not meet the requirements, the wizard leaves the fields on the resource configuration screen blank. You can optionally enter the resource configuration information in the wizard and configure the array replication requirements later. The information you enter is applied only to the SRDF resource, not to the array configuration. However, the SRDF resource will be unable to come online in the service group until replication has been configured correctly.

In addition, note the following agent requirement:

- Device group configuration must be the same on all nodes of the cluster.

## Requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication

The DR wizard configures the settings required for the VCS hardware replication agent for Hitachi TrueCopy. The wizard configures the required settings for the HTC resource in the VCS application service group. Optional settings are left in the default state.

For more information about the Hitachi TrueCopy agent functions and the configuration options, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for Hitachi TrueCopy, Configuration Guide*.

Before using the DR wizard, review the following topics:

- “[Software requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy](#)” on page 253
- “[Replication requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy](#)” on page 253

## Software requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy

The Hitachi TrueCopy agent supports all versions of Hitachi RAID Manager. For details, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for Hitachi TrueCopy, Configuration Guide*.

To use the DR wizard to configure the required agent settings for Hitachi TrueCopy, ensure that the following requirements are met:

- RAID Manager is installed in the same location on all nodes on a site.
- Enter the primary and secondary site file paths for the horcm files on the Hitachi TrueCopy Path Information panel in the wizard. The default location is:  
`System Driver\Windows`
- The horcm files are named `horcmnn.conf` (where `nn` is a positive number without a leading zero, for example, `horcm1.conf` but not `horcm01.conf`).

## Replication requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy

Before it performs any tasks, the wizard validates the array configuration as follows:

- On the primary site, the wizard verifies that all devices are the same type, but not S-SWS or SSUS.
- On the secondary site, the wizard verifies that all devices are the same type, but not P-VOL or PSUS.

Otherwise, the wizard displays an invalid configuration message and does not proceed.

The DR wizard does not start or stop replication. Array replication configuration is not a prerequisite for the wizard to perform storage cloning or service group cloning.

After the service group cloning task is complete, the DR wizard displays a screen describing the following replication requirements:

- All configured instances are running.

- No disks in the SFW disk group span across the Device Group.
- A device group can contain one or more disk groups.
- The device group does not span more than one array.
- At the primary site, all devices are of the type P-VOL.
- At the secondary site, all devices are of the type S-VOL.
- All device groups at the primary site are paired to an IP address which must be online on the secondary node.
- Device group and device names include only alphanumeric characters or the underscore character.

It is recommended that you ensure that these requirements are met before proceeding with the wizard. The wizard then validates the array replication configuration.

If replication is configured correctly, the wizard populates the resource configuration screen with the required replication settings for the HTC resource.

If the replication configuration does not meet the requirements, the wizard leaves the fields on the resource configuration screen blank. You can optionally enter the resource configuration information in the wizard and configure the array replication requirements later. The information you enter is applied only to the HTC resource, not to the array configuration. However, the HTC resource will be unable to come online in the service group until replication has been configured correctly.

## Assigning user privileges (secure clusters only)

In order to enable remote cluster operations you must configure a VCS user with the same name and privileges in each cluster.

When assigning privileges in secure clusters, you must specify fully-qualified user names, in the format `username@domain`. You cannot assign or change passwords for users when VCS is running in secure mode.

You must assign service group rights to the SQL Server service group as well as any dependent service groups except for the RVG service group.

See the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

### To assign user privileges at the primary site

- 1 Set the configuration to read/write mode:

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 2 Add the user. Specify the name in the format `username@domain`.

```
hauser -add user [-priv <Administrator|Operator>]
```

- 3 Modify the attribute of the service group to add the user. Specify the SQL Server service group and any dependent service groups except for the RVG service group.

```
hauser -add user [-priv <Administrator|Operator> [-group  
service_groups]]
```

- 4 Reset the configuration to read-only:

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

### To assign user privileges at the secondary site

- 1 Set the configuration to read/write mode:

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 2 Add the user. Specify the name in the format `username@domain`.

```
hauser -add user [-priv <Administrator|Operator>]
```

- 3 Reset the configuration to read-only:

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

## Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard

The Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard (DR wizard) assists you to perform the following tasks for the selected service group:

- Clone the storage configuration (VVR replication) or prepare a temporary storage configuration for application installation (array-based hardware replication)
- Clone the service group
- Optionally, configure VVR replication, or configure the VCS hardware replication agent settings for EMC SRDF or Hitachi TrueCopy
- Configure global clustering

---

**Warning:** To use the Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard in an array-based hardware replication environment that is not configured by the wizard, you must first run the wizard to configure global clustering before configuring replication.

---

You will need to exit the wizard after the storage cloning task to install the SQL application. The wizard allows you to exit after the logical completion of each task.

Each time you re-start the wizard, you specify the primary site system, service group, secondary site system, and replication method, as described in the following procedure. Clicking **Next** then takes you to the start page of the process following the one that you had last completed.

The DR Wizard list of service groups shows only those that contain a MountV resource. For a dependent service group to be listed, the parent service group must also contain a MountV resource.

---

**Warning:** Once you have completed configuring replication and global clustering with the DR wizard, you cannot use the wizard to change the method of replication.

---

Before running the DR wizard to configure disaster recovery, ensure that you meet the following prerequisites:

- SFW HA is installed and a cluster is configured at the secondary site. Ensure that the name assigned to the secondary site cluster is different than the name assigned to the primary site cluster.
- Your application or server role is configured for HA at the primary site and all required services are running at the primary site.
- The clusters taking part in the DR configuration should have distinct names.

- (SQL Server 2000 or 2005 only) After SQL Server is installed on the secondary site, SQL Server Full-Text Search service on the secondary site is configured to start in the manual mode and is initially in the stopped state.
- Enough free disk space is available at the secondary site to duplicate the storage configuration at the primary site.
- One static IP address is available per application service group to be cloned.
- If using VVR for replication, a minimum of one static IP address per site is available for each application instance running in the cluster.
- Global Cluster Option (GCO) is installed at the primary and secondary site, and one static IP address is available at each site for configuring GCO.
- A VCS user is configured with the same name and privileges in each cluster.
- If a firewall exists between the wizard and any systems it needs access to, the firewall is set to allow both ingoing and outgoing TCP requests on port 7419.

---

**Note:** The DR wizard does not support VVR configurations that include a Bunker secondary site.

---

In addition, see the following replication prerequisites, depending on the replication method you are using:

- [“Setting up security for VVR”](#) on page 248
- [“Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication”](#) on page 251
- [“Requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication”](#) on page 252

#### To start configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard

- 1 Start the DR Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center. Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**. Expand the Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server tab and click **Disaster Recovery Configuration > Configure Disaster Recovery > Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard**.

---

**Note:** By design, the DR wizard requires specific settings for the Lanman attributes on the primary and secondary sites. Before beginning the DR configuration, the wizard checks for these values, and if they are not set as required, the wizard will automatically proceed with setting these values, both at the primary and secondary sites.

---

- 2 In the Welcome panel, review the prerequisites to ensure that they are met and click **Next**.
- 3 In the System Selection panel, complete the requested information:

System Name            Enter the IP address or Fully Qualified Host Name (FQHN) of the primary system where the SQL instance is online.

                              If you have launched the wizard on the system where the instance is online at the primary site, you can also specify `localhost` to connect to the system.

Click **Next**.

- 4 In the Service Group Selection panel, select the service group that you want to clone to the secondary site.  
You can choose to clone only the parent service group by not selecting the dependent service group. Only online and local dependencies are supported, in soft, firm, or hard configurations. The wizard can configure only one level of dependency. In a VVR environment, the wizard configures a dependency for the RVG service group, so no other dependency is supported.  
The panel lists only service groups that contain a MountV resource.  
Click **Next**.
- 5 In the Secondary System Selection panel, enter the Fully Qualified Host Name (FQHN) or the IP address of the secondary system for which you want to configure disaster recovery.  
Click **Next**.

- 6 In the Replication Options panel, select the replication method. Although you must select the replication method now, configuring replication and the global cluster option is done later, after service group cloning.

<p>Configure Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) and the Global Cluster Option (GCO)</p>	<p>Select this option if you want to configure VVR replication.</p> <p>Select this option even if you plan to configure VVR replication or the GCO option manually. This option is required for the wizard to configure the storage cloning correctly for a VVR environment.</p> <p>The wizard verifies each configuration task and recognizes if a task has been completed successfully.</p> <p>You cannot mix replication methods. That is, if your primary site is using array-based replication, and you select the VVR option, the wizard will warn you that you cannot use VVR replication for the disaster recovery site.</p>
<p>Configure EMC SRDF and the Global Cluster Option (GCO)</p>	<p>Select this replication option if you want to configure the settings for the VCS EMC SRDF agent. All disks used for the service group on the primary site must belong to an EMC SRDF array.</p> <p>Select this option even if you plan to configure EMC SRDF replication or the GCO option manually. The wizard verifies each configuration task and recognizes if a task has been completed successfully.</p>
<p>Configure Hitachi TrueCopy and the Global Cluster Option (GCO)</p>	<p>Select this replication option if you want to configure the settings for the VCS Hitachi TrueCopy agent. All disks used for the service group on the primary site must belong to a Hitachi TrueCopy array.</p> <p>Select this option even if you configure GCO manually. The wizard verifies each configuration task and recognizes if a task has been completed successfully.</p>

Configure the Global Cluster Option (GCO) only

If you select this option, the DR wizard does not configure any replication settings. It configures the global cluster option.

Select this option if you want to use the wizard in an array-based replication environment that is not supported by this wizard. You must configure replication manually after you finish the wizard.

If you select the GCO only option, the DR wizard sets up the storage and service group configuration on the secondary site for an array-based hardware replication environment. Therefore, you cannot use this option to clone the storage and service group for a VVR replication environment.

Click **Next**.

- 7 Continue with the next DR configuration task.  
For VVR replication, see [“Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard \(VVR replication option\)”](#) on page 260.  
For array-based replication, see [“Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard \(array-based replication\)”](#) on page 264.

## Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (VVR replication option)

The DR wizard enables you to clone the storage configuration present at the primary site on to the secondary site. To do this successfully, the systems at the secondary site must have adequate free storage. If you have created the configuration but there is a mismatch in the volume sizes, the wizard can correct this and then complete the configuration.

If you have not yet started the wizard, see the following topic for the wizard prerequisites before continuing with the storage cloning procedure:

- [“Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard”](#) on page 256.

### To clone the storage configuration from the primary site to the secondary site (VVR replication method)

- 1 If you have not yet done so, start the Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard and specify the information for the primary site system, the service group, and the secondary site system. In the Replication Options panel, select the VVR replication method and click **Next**.

**Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (VVR replication option)**

- 2 Review the information in the Storage Validation Results panel. This panel compares the configuration at the secondary site with that on the primary. If the storage is already configured identically on both sites, the panel shows that results are identical. Otherwise, the panel shows the differences and recommended actions. You can toggle between a summary and detailed view of information about the differences.

The detailed view shows the following:

Disk Group	Displays the disk group name that needs to be created on the secondary site.
Volume	Displays the list of volumes, if necessary, that need to be created at the secondary site.
Size	Displays the size of the volume that needs to be created on the secondary site.
Mount	Displays the mount to be assigned the volume on the secondary site.
Recommended Action	<p>Indicates the action that needs to be taken at the secondary to make the configuration similar to that on the primary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If the volume does not exist, a new volume will be created.</li> <li>■ If the volume exists but is of a smaller size than that on the primary, the volume will be expanded to the required size.</li> <li>■ If the volume is of a greater size than that on the primary, the volume will be recreated using the appropriate size.</li> <li>■ If the volume is the same as that on the primary, the message indicates that the volumes are identical and no action is required.</li> </ul>

The summary view shows the following:

Disk groups that do not exist	Displays the names of any disk groups that exist on the primary but do not exist on the secondary.
Existing disk groups that need modification	Displays the names of any disk groups on the secondary that need to be modified to match the primary.
Free disks present on secondary	Displays the list of free disks that exist on the secondary along with details about the free space and total disk space information.

If the panel displays a message indicating that the available disks are inadequate to clone the primary site configuration on the secondary, you

can free some disks on the secondary or add more storage. Then click **Refresh/Validate** to have the wizard update its information about the secondary storage configuration.

You continue with the wizard to provide information for the recommended actions. Before proceeding to the service group configuration, the wizard ensures that the configuration of the disk groups and volumes for the service group is the same at the primary and secondary site.

Click **Next**.

- 3 In the Disk Selection for Storage Cloning panel, for each of the disk groups that does not exist or is not same as the corresponding disk group at the primary site, select disks that the wizard can use to create the respective disk groups at the secondary site.

**Selecting Disks** For each of the disk groups that needs to be created, select the required disks from the Available Disks pane. Either double-click on the host name or the >> option to move the hosts into the Selected disks pane.

Under the Available Disks label, a drop-down list allows you to filter available disks by disk enclosure name. The default is All, which displays all free disks available on all enclosures.

Click **Next**.

- 4 In the Volume Layout for Secondary Site Storage panel, complete the requested information:

Disk Group	Displays the disk group name to which the volume belongs.
Volume (Volume Size)	Displays the name and the size of the volume, corresponding to that on the primary, that needs to be created on the secondary.
Available Disks	Select the disks on which you want the wizard to create the volumes. From the Available Disks pane, either double-click on the disk name or the >> option to move the disks into the Selected Disks pane. For each disk group the Available disks pane displays the list of disks that are part of the disk group.  Select disks for each unavailable volume that you want to clone on to the secondary.
Layout	By default, the same layout as the one specified for the primary volume is selected. Click <b>Edit</b> to change the layout to suit your specific requirements.
Selected Disks	Displays the list of disks that have been moved in from the Available Disks pane.

**Cloning the storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (VVR replication option)**

View Primary Layout Displays the volume layout at the primary site. Use this information as a reference to specify the details for the Secondary layout.

Click **Next**.

- 5 In the Storage Configuration Cloning Summary panel, review the displayed information. If you want to change any selection, click **Back**. Otherwise, click **Next** to allow the wizard to implement the storage configuration at the secondary site.
- 6 In the Implementation panel, wait until the status for all the completed tasks is marked with a check symbol, indicating successful completion. Wait until the wizard completes cloning the storage. The progress bar indicates the status of the tasks. If some task could not be completed successfully, then the task is marked with an (x) symbol. The Information column displays details about the reasons for task failure. Click **Next**.
- 7 In the Storage Cloning Configuration Result screen, view the results and click **Next**.
- 8 In the SQL Server Installation panel, review the information. Do one of the following:
  - Click **Finish** to exit the wizard and proceed with installing the application on the required nodes on the secondary site. Before you begin installation, ensure that your disk groups are imported and volumes are mounted. If volumes were mounted as drive paths (folder mount) on the primary site, the wizard does not mount the volumes on the secondary site. You must manually format the volumes and assign the drive path to the volumes using Veritas Enterprise Administrator. Use the same letters and folder names that were assigned on the primary site.
  - If the DR wizard is run from a remote node, you can keep the wizard running on that node. You can then install the application locally on each of the required nodes.
  - If you are running the DR wizard from a local system and need to install the SQL application on that system, the system gets restarted when the application installation is complete. You can then restart the wizard.
  - Click **Next** to continue with service group cloning if the application is already installed on the required nodes.

When restarting the Disaster Recovery wizard, continue through the wizard from the Welcome panel, specifying the primary site system, the service group, the secondary site system, and the replication method. The wizard

proceeds to the storage cloning panel. If it detects that the storage is identical on the secondary site, it proceeds to the next task.

## Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (array-based replication)

To enable you to install applications, the DR wizard can create a temporary disk group, DR\_APP\_INSTALL\_DG, which contains the volumes and mount points for use in application installation. The temporary configuration uses 500 MB volumes or the volume size at the primary site, depending on which is smaller. The wizard deletes the temporary configuration after application installation.

If you have already installed the application on all nodes, you can skip this storage cloning step by unchecking the Perform storage cloning box on the Storage Cloning panel.

If you have not yet started the wizard, see the following topic for the wizard prerequisites before continuing with the procedure:

- [“Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard”](#) on page 256.

### To create temporary storage for application installation (array-based replication)

- 1 If you have not yet done so, start the Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard and specify the information for the primary site system, the service group, and the secondary site system.
- 2 In the Replication Options panel, select the array-based replication method you plan to use and click **Next**:
  - EMC SRDF
  - Hitachi TrueCopy
  - Global Cluster Option only (select if you are using another agent-supported array-based replication method)
- 3 If you selected Hitachi TrueCopy replication, the Hitachi TrueCopy File Paths panel is displayed. The wizard populates the fields if it locates the files in the default location. Otherwise, fill in the file path information for both the primary and secondary sites as follows:

RAID Manager bin path	Path to the RAID Manager Command Line interface Default: C:\HORCM\etc where C is the system drive.
-----------------------	--

## Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (array-based replication)

HORCM files location	Path to the horcm configuration files (horcm $nn$ .conf) Default: C:\Windows where C is the system drive  An horcm configuration file is required by the RAID Manager on all nodes; however the wizard does not validate this.
----------------------	--

- 4 In the Storage Cloning panel, choose one of the following:
  - If you have not yet installed the application on all nodes, leave **Perform storage cloning** checked and click **Next**. Continue with the next step in this procedure.
  - If you have already installed the application on all nodes, uncheck **Perform storage cloning** and click **Next**. Continue with the procedure for service group cloning.

- 5 The Storage Validation Results panel shows the temporary storage configuration that the wizard will configure at the secondary site. You can click **Show Summary** to toggle to a summary view and toggle back to a detailed view by clicking **Show Details**.

The detailed view shows the following:

Disk Group	Displays the name of the single disk group required on the secondary site for temporary storage: DR_APP_INSTALL_DG
Volume	Displays the list of volumes required at the secondary site.
Size	Displays the size of the volumes required on the secondary site.
Mount	Displays the mounts required at the secondary site.
Recommended Action	Indicates the action that the wizard will take at the secondary site.

The summary view shows the following:

Existing configuration	Displays the existing secondary configuration.
Free disks present on secondary	Displays the list of free disks that exist on the secondary along with details about the free space and total disk space information.

If the panel displays a message indicating that the available disks on the secondary are inadequate, you can free some disks on the secondary or add more storage. Then click **Refresh/Validate** so that the wizard can update its information about the secondary storage configuration.

Click **Next**.

- 6 In the Disk Selection for Storage Cloning panel, a default disk selection is shown for the temporary storage at the secondary site. You can change the selection by moving disks to and from the Available Disks and Selected Disks pane. Under the Available Disks label, a drop-down list allows you to filter available disks by disk enclosure name. The default is All, which displays all free disks available on all enclosures. Click **Next**.
- 7 The Volume Layout for Secondary Site Storage panel shows a default volume layout for the temporary storage based on the primary site volume layout. Optionally, you can change the default disk assignment and layout for any volume:

Disk Group	Displays the DR_APP_INSTALL__DG disk group.
Volume (Volume Size)	Displays the name and the size of the volume to be created on the secondary.
Available Disks	Displays the disks that are available for the volumes. To select a disk, either double-click on the host name or click the >> button to move the hosts into the Selected Disks pane.
Layout	By default, the same layout as the one specified for the primary volume is selected. Click <b>Edit</b> to change the layout to suit your specific requirements.
Selected Disks	Displays the list of disks that have been selected for the volume. To remove a disk from the list, select it and click the << button.
View Primary Layout	Displays the volume layout at the primary site.

Click **Next**.

- 8 In the Storage Configuration Cloning Summary panel, review the displayed information. If you want to change any selection, click **Back**. Otherwise, click **Next** to allow the wizard to implement the temporary storage configuration at the secondary site.
- 9 In the Implementation panel, wait until the status for all the completed tasks is marked with a check symbol, indicating successful completion. Wait until the wizard completes cloning the storage. The progress bar indicates the status of the tasks. If some task could not be completed successfully,

**Creating temporary storage on the secondary site using the DR wizard (array-based replication)**

then the task is marked with an (x) symbol. The Information column displays details about the reasons for task failure. Click **Next**.

- 10 In the Storage Configuration Cloning Result screen, view the results and click **Next**.
- 11 In the SQL Server Installation panel, review the information and do one of the following:
  - Before you begin installation, ensure that your disk groups are imported and volumes are mounted. If volumes were mounted as drive paths (folder mount) on the primary site, the wizard does not mount the volumes on the secondary site. You must manually format the volumes and assign the drive path to the volumes using Veritas Enterprise Administrator. Use the same letters and folder names that were assigned on the primary site.
  - If you are running the DR Wizard from a local system and need to install the SQL application on that system, click **Finish** to exit the wizard and proceed with installing the application on the required nodes.

After completing the application installation, you can launch the DR Wizard again to proceed with service group cloning. At this point the temporary cloned storage is no longer needed. Before beginning service group cloning, the wizard displays the Temporary Storage Deletion panel to confirm the deletion of the temporary storage.
  - If the DR Wizard is run from a remote node, you can keep the wizard running on that node. You can then install the SQL application locally on each of the required nodes.

After completing the application installation, click **Next** to proceed with service group cloning. At this point the temporary cloned storage is no longer needed. Before beginning service group cloning, the wizard displays the Temporary Storage Deletion panel to confirm the deletion of the temporary storage.

## Installing and configuring SQL Server on the secondary site

Use the same installation and configuration procedures for SQL Server as on the primary site but note the following considerations when installing SQL Server on the secondary site.

- Before installing Microsoft SQL Server, verify that the cluster disk group is imported to the first node and the volumes are mounted. If volumes were mounted as drive paths (folder mount) on the primary site, the DR Wizard does not mount the volumes on the secondary site and you must format the volumes and mount them manually.  
See “[About managing disk groups and volumes](#)” on page 130.
- During installation, use the same instance name as on the primary site.

## Cloning the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site

The Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard enables you to create a SQL Server service group and define the attributes for its resources on all the nodes for this SQL instance within the cluster, simultaneously.

Before cloning the service group on the secondary site, verify that you have installed the application on the secondary site on all nodes for this SQL instance.

If you are launching the wizard for the first time, see the following topic for additional information:

- “[Configuring disaster recovery with the DR wizard](#)” on page 256.

---

**Note:** Although you can view the cloning progress in the VCS Java Console, do not save and close the configuration while cloning is in progress. Otherwise, the cloning fails and you have to delete the service group on the secondary site and run the wizard again.

---

### To clone the service group configuration from the primary site to the secondary site

- 1 At the primary site, verify that you have brought the application service group online.
- 2 Start the DR Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center. Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**. Expand the Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server tab

and click **Disaster Recovery Configuration > Configure Disaster Recovery > Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard**.

- 3 In the Welcome panel, click **Next** and continue through the wizard, providing the requested information for the primary site system, the service group, the secondary site system, and the replication method.  
If you selected the VVR replication method, the wizard proceeds to the storage cloning task and notifies you if it detects that the storage is identical. Click **Next** until you reach the Service Group Analysis panel. If you selected an array-based replication method (EMC SRDF, HTC, or GCO only), the temporary storage is no longer needed once the application is installed and the wizard confirms whether or not to delete it.
- 4 (Array-based replication method only) In the Temporary Storage Deletion panel, confirm whether or not to delete the cloned storage:
  - If the application is already installed on the required nodes, leave **Delete cloned storage** checked and click **Next**. When the wizard prompts you to confirm deleting the shared storage, click **Yes**.
  - If you want to delete the cloned storage manually later, uncheck **Delete cloned storage** and click **Next**.
- 5 (Array-based replication method only) If you selected to delete the cloned storage, the wizard shows the progress of the tasks in the Implementation panel. If the storage deletion fails, the wizard will show a failure summary page. Otherwise, when it shows the tasks are complete, click **Next**.
- 6 Review the following information displayed in the Service Group Analysis panel and click **Next** to continue with service group cloning.

Service Group Name	Displays the list of application-related service groups present on the cluster at the primary site.
Service Group Details on the Primary Cluster	Displays the resource attributes for the service group at the primary site. These include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ IP Resource: consists of the IP address and the subnet mask</li> <li>■ NIC Resource: is the MAC address</li> </ul>
Service Group Details on the Secondary Cluster	Displays a message to indicate whether the service group or the corresponding attributes have been configured at the secondary site.

- 7 In the Service Group Cloning panel, specify the requested system information for the secondary site.

Service Group Name	Depending on the application service group already created at the primary site, and subsequently selected on the Service Group Selection page, the wizard displays the names of the service groups that will be cloned at the secondary site.
Available Systems	<p>Displays a list of available systems on the secondary cluster that are not yet selected for service group cloning.</p> <p>Select any additional secondary systems on which you want the wizard to clone the application service group configuration.</p> <p>Either double-click on the system name or use the &gt; option to move the hosts into the Selected Systems pane.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you want to add systems to a service group after you finish cloning the service group configuration with the DR wizard, you cannot do so by running the DR wizard again. Instead, run the VCS configuration wizard and edit the system list of the existing service group.</p>
Selected Systems	Displays the list of selected systems. The secondary system that you selected earlier in the wizard is listed by default.

Click **Next**.

- 8 In the Service Group Attribute Selection panel, complete the requested information to create the required resources on the secondary site. The panel also displays the service group resource name and the attribute information at the primary site.

Resource Name	Displays the list of resources that exist on the primary cluster.
Attribute Name	<p>Displays the attribute name associated with each of the resources displayed in the Resource Name column.</p> <p>If you need to edit additional attributes that are not shown, you must edit them manually on the secondary site service group once service group cloning is complete.</p>
Primary Cluster	Displays the primary attribute values for each of the displayed attributes.

**Cloning the service group configuration from the primary to the secondary site**

Secondary Cluster      The default is the same as the primary cluster. The same virtual IP address can be used if both sites exist on the same network segment. You can specify different attributes depending on your environment. For the MACAddress attribute select the appropriate public NIC from the drop-down list.

Click **Next**.

- 9 In the Service Group Summary, review the attribute information that will be cloned on to the secondary cluster. Click **Back** to change any of the secondary service group attributes. Otherwise, click **Next** to proceed with cloning the service group configuration on the secondary site.
- 10 In the Implementation panel, wait until all the tasks are completed. The progress bar indicates the status of the tasks. Successful tasks are marked with a check symbol. If some task could not be completed successfully, the task is marked with an (x) symbol. The Information column displays details about the reasons for task failure. Click **Next**
- 11 If the cloning failed, review the troubleshooting information. Otherwise, click **Next** to continue with the replication and GCO configuration, or with GCO only, depending on which option you selected.  
Optionally, you can exit the wizard at this point and launch the wizard again later. When you launch the wizard again, continue through the wizard, specifying the primary site system, the service group, the secondary site system, and the replication method. Click **Next** to continue to the replication and/or GCO configuration task.

To configure an MSDTC service group, see [“Tasks for configuring MSDTC for high availability”](#) on page 41.

## Configuring replication and global clustering

After creating the identical service group configuration on both sites, the DR wizard helps you set up replication and global clustering (GCO option). You can choose to configure replication using VVR or an agent-supported array-based hardware replication.

If you are using an array-based replication that is not supported by the wizard, you configure global clustering only. In this case, you must complete configuring global clustering before configuring replication.

The following topics cover the steps required for each replication method:

- [“Configuring VVR replication and global clustering”](#) on page 272
- [“Configuring EMC SRDF replication and global clustering”](#) on page 280
- [“Configuring Hitachi TrueCopy replication and global clustering”](#) on page 283
- [“Configuring global clustering only”](#) on page 286

## Configuring VVR replication and global clustering

After you complete the service group configuration task in the DR wizard, you configure VVR replication and global clustering.

---

**Note:** By default, in an Exchange or SQL Server environment, the DR wizard organizes all the volumes in a disk group under one Replicated Volume Group (RVG). If you require a different organization, you should configure it using the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) rather than the DR wizard.

---

Before you begin, ensure that you have met the following prerequisites:

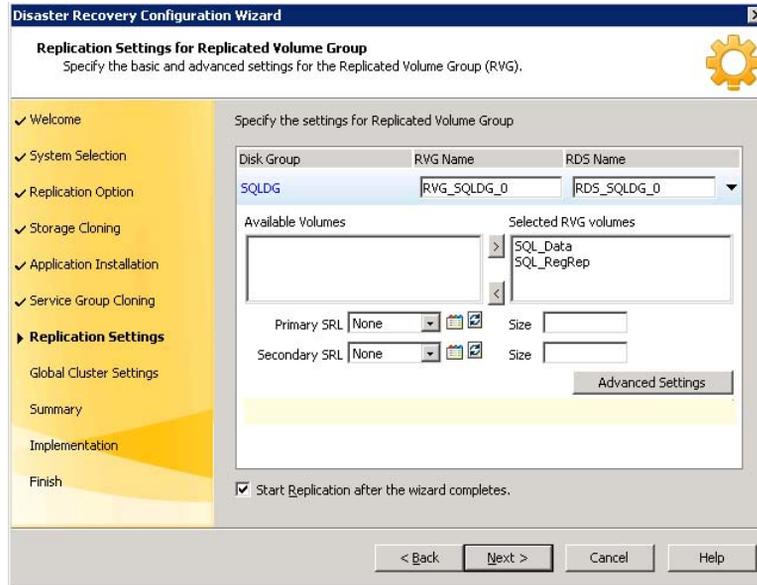
- Ensure that Veritas Volume Replicator is installed at the primary and secondary site.
- Ensure that Global Cluster Option (GCO) is installed at the primary and secondary site. One static IP address must be available per site for configuring GCO.
- Ensure that VVR Security Service (VxSAS) is configured at the primary and secondary site. See the following topic:
  - [“Setting up security for VVR”](#) on page 248
- Ensure that a minimum of one static IP address per site is available for each application instance running in the cluster.

- Ensure that you configure a VCS user with the same name and privileges in each cluster.

Use the following procedure to configure VVR replication and global clustering with the DR wizard.

#### To configure VVR replication and GCO

- 1 Verify that the application server service group is online at the primary site and the appropriate disk groups are imported at the secondary site.
- 2 If the wizard is still open after the previous wizard task, continue with the Replication Setup panel. Otherwise, launch the wizard and proceed to the Replication Setup panel as follows:
  - Expand the Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server tab and click **Disaster Recovery Configuration > Configure Disaster Recovery > Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard**.
  - Start the DR Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center. Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**.
  - On the Welcome panel, click **Next** and continue through the wizard, providing the requested information.
  - On the Replication Methods panel, click **Configure VVR and the Global Cluster Option (GCO)**. Click **Next** and continue to the Replication Setup panel.
- 3 In the Replication Setup panel, review the replication requirements. If you have met the requirements, click **Next**. If not, click **Cancel** and restart the wizard after meeting the requirements.
- 4 In the Replication Settings for Replicated Volume Group panel, specify the requested information. If you are adding a DR site to an existing DR configuration, fields that must match the existing settings, such as the RVG or RDS name, are dimmed so that you cannot change them.

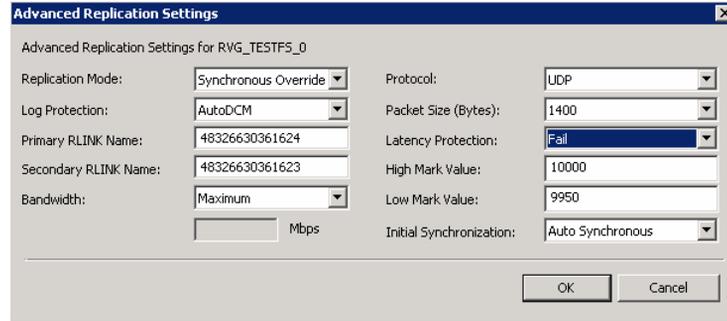


- Disk Group** The left column lists the disk groups. By design, an RVG is created for each disk group.
- RVG Name** Displays the default RVG name. If required, change this to a name of your choice.
- RDS Name** Displays the default Replicated Data Set (RDS) name. If required, change this to a name of your choice.
- Available Volumes** Displays the list of available volumes that have not been selected to be a part of the RVG.  
Either double-click on the volume name or use the > option to move the volumes into the Selected RVG Volumes pane.

Selected RVG Volumes	<p>Displays the list of volumes that have been selected to be a part of the RVG.</p> <p>To remove a selected volume, either double-click the volume name or use the &lt; option to move the volumes into the Available Volumes pane.</p> <p>Symantec recommends excluding tempdb from replication. If you earlier moved tempdb to a separate volume in the same disk group as the system database volumes, you can exclude tempdb from replication by removing the tempdb volume from the Selected RVG Volumes pane.</p>
Primary SRL	<p>If you did not create a Replicator Log volume on the primary site, click <b>Create New</b> on the drop-down menu. On the New Volume dialog box, specify the name, size, and disk.</p> <p>Otherwise, select the appropriate primary Replicator Log volume from the drop-down menu and enter an appropriate size.</p>
Secondary SRL	<p>If you did not create a Replicator Log volume on the primary site, click <b>Create New</b> on the drop-down menu. On the New Volume dialog box, specify the same name and size as you specified for the primary SRL.</p> <p>Otherwise, select the appropriate secondary Replicator Log volume from the drop-down menu and enter an appropriate size.</p>
Start Replication after the wizard completes	<p>Select this check box to start replication automatically after the wizard completes the necessary configurations.</p> <p>Once replication is configured and running, deselecting the checkbox does not stop replication.</p>

- Click **Advanced Settings** to specify some additional replication properties. The options on the dialog box are described column-wise, from left to right; refer to the *Veritas Volume Replicator*

*Administrator's Guide* for additional information on VVR replication options.



**Replication Mode** Select the required mode of replication; **Synchronous**, **Asynchronous**, or **Synchronous Override**. The default is synchronous override.

**Log Protection** Select the appropriate log protection from the list. The **AutoDCM** is the default selected mode for the Replicator Log overflow protection when all the volumes in the Primary RVG have a DCM log. The DCM is enabled when the Replicator Log overflows.

The **Off** option disables Replicator Log Overflow protection.

The **Override** option enables log protection. If the Secondary node is still connected and the Replicator Log is about to overflow then the writes are stalled until a predetermined amount of space, that is, 5% or 20 MB (whichever is lesser) becomes available in the Replicator Log.

If the Secondary becomes inactive due to disconnection or administrative action then Replicator log protection is disabled, and the Replicator Log overflows.

The **Fail** option enables log protection. If the log is about to overflow the writes are stalled until a predetermined amount of space, that is, 5% or 20 MB (whichever is lesser) becomes available in the Replicator Log. If the connection between primary and secondary RVG is broken, then, any new writes to the primary RVG are failed.

Primary RLINK Name	Enter a name of your choice for the primary RLINK. If you do not specify any name then the wizard assigns a default name.
Secondary RLINK Name	Enter a name of your choice for the Secondary RLINK. If you do not specify any name then the wizard assigns a default name.
Bandwidth	By default, VVR replication uses the maximum available bandwidth. You can select <b>Specify</b> to specify a bandwidth limit.  The default unit is Mega bits per second (Mbps) and the minimum allowed value is 1 Mbps.
Protocol	Choose TCP or UDP. UDP/IP is the default replication protocol.
Packet Size (Bytes)	Default is 1400 Bytes. From the drop-down list, choose the required packet size for data transfer. The default unit for the packet size is Bytes. You can set the packet size only if the protocol is UDP/IP.
Latency Protection	By default, latency protection is set to <b>Off</b> .  When this option is selected the <b>High Mark Value</b> and the <b>Low Mark Value</b> are disabled. Select the <b>Fail</b> or <b>Override</b> option to enable Latency protection.  This <b>Override</b> option behaves like the <b>Off</b> option when the Secondary is disconnected and behaves like the <b>Fail</b> option when the Secondary is connected.
High Mark Value	This option is enabled only when Latency Protection is set to <b>Override</b> or <b>Fail</b> . It specifies the maximum number of pending updates by which the secondary site can be behind the primary site. The default value is 10000.  To ensure that latency protection is most effective the difference between the high and low mark values must not be very large.
Low Mark Value	This option is enabled only when Latency Protection is set to <b>Override</b> or <b>Fail</b> . When the updates in the Replicator log reach the <b>High Mark Value</b> , then the writes to the system at the primary site continues to be stalled until the number of pending updates on the Replicator log falls back to the <b>Low Mark Value</b> . The default is 9950.

Initial Synchronization

If you are doing an initial setup, then use the **Auto Synchronous** option to synchronize the secondary site and start replication. This is the default.

When this option is selected, VVR by default performs intelligent synchronization to replicate only those blocks on a volume that are being used by the file system. If required, you can disable intelligent synchronization.

If you want to use the **Synchronize from Checkpoint** method then you must first create a checkpoint.

If you have a considerable amount of data on the primary data volumes then you may first want to synchronize the secondary for existing data using the backup-restore method with checkpoint. After the restore is complete, use the **Synchronize from Checkpoint** option to start replication from the checkpoint to synchronize the secondary with the writes that happened when backup-restore was in progress.

To apply changes to advanced settings, click **OK**. On the Replication Settings for Replicated Volume Group panel click **Next**.

- 5 In the Replication Attribute Settings panel, specify required replication attribute information for the cluster at the primary and secondary site. Click the arrow icon to expand an RVG row and display the replication attribute fields. If you are configuring an additional secondary site (multiple DR sites), some fields are disabled.

Disk Group	Displays the list of disk groups that have been configured.
RVG Name	Displays the Replicated Volume Groups corresponding to the disk groups.
IP Address	Enter replication IPs that will be used for replication, one for the primary site and another for the secondary site.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the system at the primary site and the secondary site.
Public NIC	Select the public NIC from the drop-down list for the system at the primary and secondary site.
Copy	Enables you to copy the above network settings to any additional RVGs that are listed on this screen. If there is only one RVG, this option does not apply.

After specifying the replication attributes for each of the RVGs, click **Next**.

- 6 In the Global Cluster Settings panel specify the heartbeat information for the wide-area connector resource. You must specify this information for the primary and the secondary cluster. Any existing WAC resource information can be reused. If you are adding a DR site to an existing DR configuration, GCO is already configured at the primary site, so the primary site fields are dimmed.

Use existing settings	Allows you to use a WAC resource that already exists at either the primary or secondary site. Click Primary or Secondary, depending on the site at which the WAC resource already exists.
Resource Name	Select the existing WAC resource name from the resource name list box.
Create new settings	Select the appropriate site, primary or secondary, for which you want to create a new WAC resource.
IP Address	Enter a virtual IP for the WAC resource.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the system at the primary site and the secondary site.
Public NIC	Select the public NIC for each system from the drop-down list for the system at the primary and secondary site.
Start GCO after configuration	Select this check box to bring the cluster service group online and start GCO automatically after the wizard completes the necessary configurations. Otherwise, you must bring the service group online and start GCO manually, after the wizard completes.  Once GCO is configured and running, deselecting the checkbox does not stop GCO.

- 7 In the Settings Summary panel, review the displayed information. Click **Back** if you want to change any of the parameters. If you have a printer installed, you can click the printer icon at the bottom of the scrollable list to print the settings.  
Click **Next** to implement the settings.
- 8 In the Implementation panel, wait till the wizard completes creating the replication configuration and the WAC resource required for global clustering. If a task could not be completed successfully, it is marked with an (x) symbol. For any critical errors, the wizard displays an error message. For less critical errors, the Information column displays a brief description

about the task failure and the next screen displays additional information on what action you can take to remedy it. Click **Next**.

- 9 In the Finish panel, review the displayed information. If a task did not complete successfully, the panel displays an error message, which will provide some insight into the cause for failure. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

## Configuring EMC SRDF replication and global clustering

After you complete the service group configuration task in the DR wizard, you configure replication and global clustering.

The wizard helps you to configure the settings for the SRDF resource in the application service group.

Ensure that you have met the prerequisites for replication. See the following topic:

- [“Requirements for EMC SRDF array-based hardware replication”](#) on page 251

In addition, ensure that the Global Cluster Option (GCO) is installed at the primary and secondary site. One static IP address must be available per site for configuring GCO.

The wizard configures the required agent settings as well as the SYMM heartbeat. It uses defaults for optional settings. See the following topic:

- [“Optional settings for EMC SRDF”](#) on page 282

### To configure EMC SRDF replication and GCO

- 1 Verify that you have brought the application service group online at the primary site.
- 2 If the wizard is still open after the service group cloning task, continue with the Replication Setup panel. Otherwise, launch the wizard and proceed to the Replication Setup panel as follows:
  - Start the DR Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center. Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**. Expand the Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server tab and click **Disaster Recovery Configuration > Configure Disaster Recovery > Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard**.
  - In the Welcome panel, click **Next** and continue through the wizard, providing the requested information.
  - In the Replication Methods panel, click **Configure EMC SRDF and the Global Cluster Option (GCO)**. Click **Next** and continue to the Replication Setup panel.

- 3 In the Replication Setup panel, review the replication requirements. If you have met the requirements, click **Next**.

---

**Warning:** Although you can continue with the wizard even if replication requirements are not met, the wizard will warn you that the configuration is not valid. If the configuration is not valid, the SRDF resource cannot come online in the service group.

---

- 4 In the SRDF Resource Configuration panel, the wizard populates the required resource fields if replication has been configured. Otherwise, you must enter the required resource settings manually.

Symmetrix Array ID (SID)	Specify the array ID for the primary site and for the secondary site.
Device Group name	Specify the name of the Symmetrix device group that contains the disks of the disk group for the selected instance.
Available VMDG Resources	Select the disk groups associated with the selected application instance.

- 5 If you want to configure an additional SRDF resource for the instance, click **Add**. Otherwise, click **Next**.

- 6 In the Global Cluster Settings panel, specify the heartbeat information for the wide-area connector resource. You must specify this information for the primary and the secondary cluster. Any existing WAC resource information can be reused. If you are adding a DR site to an existing DR configuration, GCO is already configured at the primary site, so the primary site fields are dimmed.

Use existing settings	Allows you to use a WAC resource that already exists at either the primary or secondary site. Click Primary or Secondary, depending on the site at which the WAC resource already exists.
Resource Name	Select the existing WAC resource name from the resource name list box.
Create new settings	Select the appropriate site, primary or secondary, for which you want to create a new WAC resource.
IP Address	Enter a virtual IP for the WAC resource.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the system at the primary site and the secondary site.

Public NIC	Select the public NIC for each system from the drop-down list for the system at the primary and secondary site.
Start GCO after configuration	Select this check box to bring the cluster service group online and start GCO automatically after the wizard completes the necessary configurations. Otherwise, you must bring the service group online and start GCO manually, after the wizard completes.  Once GCO is configured and running, deselecting the checkbox does not stop GCO.

Click **Next**.

- 7 In the Settings Summary panel, review the displayed information. Click **Back** if you want to change any of the parameters specified for the replication resource settings or the global cluster settings. Click **Next**.
- 8 In the Implementation panel, wait until the wizard completes creating the replication configuration and the WAC resource required for global clustering. A check (✓) symbol indicates successful completion of a task. An (✗) symbol indicates a task that could not be completed successfully. The Information column shows details about the reasons for task failure. Click **Next**.
- 9 In the Finish panel, review the displayed information. If a task did not complete successfully, the panel displays an error message, which will provide some insight into the cause for failure. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.
- 10 Proceed with configuring additional optional settings for the SRDF resource if desired, and then verifying the disaster recovery configuration.

## Optional settings for EMC SRDF

The wizard configures the required settings for the SRDF resource in the VCS application service group. The wizard also detects and configures the SymHome attribute.

Other settings are left in the default state. For information on configuring the optional settings, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for EMC SRDF, Configuration Guide*. If you change any settings, ensure that you edit the resource on both the primary and secondary sites.

The optional settings use the following defaults:

Option	Default setting
DevFOTime	2 seconds per device required for a device to fail over
AutoTakeover	The default is 1; the agent performs a read-write enable on partitioned devices in the write-disabled state during a failover, if devices are consistent.
SplitTakeover	The default is 1; the agent brings service groups online on the R2 side even if the devices are in the split state because they are read-write enabled.

## Configuring Hitachi TrueCopy replication and global clustering

After you complete the service group configuration task in the DR wizard, you configure replication and global clustering.

The wizard helps you to configure the settings for the HTC resource in the application service group.

Ensure that you have met the prerequisites. See the following topic:

- [“Requirements for Hitachi TrueCopy array-based hardware replication”](#) on page 252

In addition, ensure that the Global Cluster Option (GCO) is installed at the primary and secondary site. One static IP address must be available per site for configuring GCO.

The wizard configures the required agent settings. It uses defaults for optional settings. See the following topic:

- [“Optional settings for HTC”](#) on page 286

### To configure Hitachi TrueCopy replication and GCO

- 1 Verify that you have brought the application server service group online at the primary site
- 2 If the wizard is still open after the service group cloning task, continue with the Replication Setup panel. Otherwise, launch the wizard and proceed to the Replication Setup panel as follows:
  - Start the DR Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center. Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**. Expand the Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server tab and click **Disaster Recovery Configuration > Configure Disaster Recovery > Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard**.

- In the Welcome panel, click **Next** and continue through the wizard, providing the requested information.
  - In the Replication Methods panel, click **Configure Hitachi TrueCopy and the Global Cluster Option (GCO)**. Click **Next** and continue to the Replication Setup panel.
- 3 In the Replication Setup panel, review the replication requirements. If you have met the requirements, click **Next**.

---

**Warning:** Although you can continue with the wizard even if replication requirements are not met, the wizard will warn you that the configuration is not valid. If the configuration is not valid, the HTC resource cannot come online in the service group.

---

- 4 In the HTC Resource Configuration panel, the wizard populates the required resource fields if the horcm file is configured properly. If not, you can configure the horcm file and click **Refresh** to populate the fields. Alternatively, enter the required resource settings manually:

Instance ID	Specify the instance number of the device group. Multiple device groups may have the same instance number.
Device Group name	Specify the name of the Hitachi device group that contains the disk group for the selected instance. The device group name must be the same on both the primary and secondary sites.
Available VMDG Resources	Select the disk groups associated with the selected application instance.
Add, Remove, Reset buttons	Click Add or Remove to display empty fields so that you can manually add or remove additional resources. Click Refresh to repopulate all fields from the current horcm file.

- 5 If you want to configure an additional HTC resource for the instance, click **Add**. Otherwise, click **Next**.
- 6 In the Global Cluster Settings panel, specify the heartbeat information for the wide-area connector resource. You must specify this information for the primary and the secondary cluster. Any existing WAC resource information can be reused. If you are adding a DR site to an existing DR configuration,

GCO is already configured at the primary site, so the primary site fields are dimmed.

Use existing settings	Allows you to use a WAC resource that already exists at either the primary or secondary site. Click Primary or Secondary, depending on the site at which the WAC resource already exists.
Resource Name	Select the existing WAC resource name from the resource name list box.
Create new settings	Select the appropriate site, primary or secondary, for which you want to create a new WAC resource.
IP Address	Enter a virtual IP for the WAC resource.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the system at the primary site and the secondary site.
Public NIC	Select the public NIC for each system from the drop-down list for the system at the primary and secondary site.
Start GCO after configuration	Select this check box to bring the cluster service group online and start GCO automatically after the wizard completes the necessary configurations. Otherwise, you must bring the service group online and start GCO manually, after the wizard completes.  Once GCO is configured and running, deselecting the checkbox does not stop GCO.

- 7 In the Settings Summary panel, review the displayed information. Click **Back** if you want to change any of the parameters specified for the replication resource settings or the global cluster settings. Click **Next**.
- 8 In the Implementation panel, wait until the wizard completes creating the replication configuration and the WAC resource required for global clustering. A check (✓) symbol indicates successful completion of a task. An (✗) symbol indicates a task that could not be completed successfully. The Information column shows details about the reasons for task failure. Click **Next**.
- 9 In the Finish panel, review the displayed information. If a task did not complete successfully, the panel displays an error message, which will provide some insight into the cause for failure. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

- 10 Proceed with configuring additional optional settings for the HTC resource if desired, and then verifying the disaster recovery configuration.

## Optional settings for HTC

The wizard configures the required settings for the HTC resource in the VCS application service group.

Optional settings are left in the default state. For information on configuring the optional settings, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for Hitachi TrueCopy, Configuration Guide*.

The optional settings use the following defaults:

Option	Default setting
LinkMonitor	The default is 0; the agent does not periodically attempt to resynchronize the S-VOL side if the replication link is disconnected. The value 1 indicates that when the replication link is disconnected, the agent periodically attempts to resynchronize the S-VOL side using the pairresync command.
SplitTakeover	The default is 0; the agent does not permit a failover to S-VOL devices if the replication link is disconnected; that is, if P-VOL devices are in the PSUE state.

## Configuring global clustering only

If you are using a replication method that the DR wizard does not configure, you must select the replication option to configure global clustering only.

For the GCO only option, you use the wizard to complete all DR tasks except the replication configuration task. You must complete the final wizard task of configuring global clustering before configuring replication.

Before configuring GCO:

- Ensure that the Global Cluster Option (GCO) is installed at the primary and secondary site. One static IP address must be available per site for configuring GCO.
- If you created secure clusters at the primary site and secondary site, ensure that you have configured a VCS user with the same name and privileges in each cluster, and the user must be added in the Administrator role.

The following procedure assumes that you have completed the earlier wizard tasks through the service group cloning task and are continuing with the final step of configuring global clustering.

**To configure GCO only**

- 1 If the wizard is still open after the service group cloning task, continue with the GCO Setup panel. Otherwise, launch the wizard and proceed to the GCO Setup panel as follows:
  - Start the DR Configuration Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center. Click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**. Expand the Solutions for Microsoft SQL Server tab and click **Disaster Recovery Configuration > Configure Disaster Recovery > Disaster Recovery Configuration Wizard**.
  - In the Welcome panel, click **Next** and continue through the wizard, providing the requested information.
  - In the Replication Methods panel, click **Configure Global Cluster Option (GCO) only**. Click **Next** and continue to the GCO Setup panel.
- 2 In the GCO Setup panel, review the requirements. If you have met the requirements, click **Next**.
- 3 In the Global Cluster Settings panel specify the heartbeat information for the wide-area connector resource. You must specify this information for the primary and the secondary cluster. Any existing WAC resource information can be reused. If you are adding a DR site to an existing DR configuration, GCO is already configured at the primary site, so the primary site fields are dimmed.

Use existing settings	Allows you to use a WAC resource that already exists at either the primary or secondary site. Click Primary or Secondary, depending on the site at which the WAC resource already exists.
Resource Name	Select the existing WAC resource name from the resource name list box.
Create new settings	Select the appropriate site, primary or secondary, for which you want to create a new WAC resource.
IP Address	Enter a virtual IP for the WAC resource.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the system at the primary site and the secondary site.
Public NIC	Select the public NIC for each system from the drop-down list for the system at the primary and secondary site.

Start GCO after configuration	Select this check box to bring the cluster service group online and start GCO automatically after the wizard completes the necessary configurations. Otherwise, you must bring the service group online and start GCO manually, after the wizard completes.  Once GCO is configured and running, deselecting the checkbox does not stop GCO.
-------------------------------	--

- 4 In the Settings Summary panel, review the displayed information. Click **Back** if you want to change any of the parameters specified. Click **Next**.
- 5 In the Implementation panel, wait until the wizard completes creating the replication configuration and the WAC resource required for global clustering. A check (✓) symbol indicates successful completion of a task. An (x) symbol indicates a task that could not be completed successfully. The Information column shows details about the reasons for task failure. Click **Next**.
- 6 In the Finish panel, review the displayed information. If a task did not complete successfully, the panel displays an error message, which will provide some insight into the cause for failure. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

## Verifying the disaster recovery configuration

The steps you need to take to verify your DR configuration depend on the type of replication you are using.

After the DR wizard has completed, you can confirm the following to verify the DR configuration:

- For VVR replication, confirm that the configuration of disk groups and volumes at the DR site have been created by the DR wizard storage cloning.
- Confirm that the application VCS service group has been created in the DR cluster including the same service group name, same resources, and same dependency structure as the primary site's application VCS service group.
- Confirm that the application service group is online at the primary site. The application service group should remain offline at the DR site.
- For VVR replication:
  - Ensure VVR replication configuration. This includes ensuring that the RVGs have been created at primary and secondary with the correct

volume inclusion, replication mode, Replicator Log configuration, and any specified advanced options.

- Confirm that the replication state matches what was specified during configuration. If specified to start immediately, ensure that it is started. If specified to start later, ensure that it is stopped.
- Ensure that the VVR RVG VCS service group is configured on the primary and secondary clusters, including the correct dependency to the application service group, the specified IP for replication, and the correct disk group and RVG objects within the RVG VCS service group.
- Confirm that the RVG service groups are online at the primary and secondary sites.
- Confirm that the RVG Primary resources are online in the primary cluster's application service group. If they are offline, then bring them online in the primary site's cluster's application service group. Do not bring them online in the secondary site application service group.
- For array-based replication, verify that the required array resource is created in the primary and secondary cluster's application service group and that a dependency is set between the VMDg resource and the array resource.
- For EMC SRDF replication, verify that the SRDF resource is online in the primary cluster's application service group. If not, bring it online.
- For Hitachi TrueCopy replication, verify that the HTC resource is online in the primary cluster's application service group. If not, bring it online.
- For Hitachi TrueCopy replication, you must perform a manual Volume Manager rescan on all the secondary nodes after setting up replication and other dependent resources, in order to bring the disk groups online. This must be performed only once, after which the failover works uninterrupted. For more information, see *Veritas™ Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for Hitachi TrueCopy Installation and Configuration Guide*.
- Ensure that the application service groups are configured as global.
- Check to ensure that the two clusters are communicating and that the status of communication between the two clusters has a state of Alive.
- If you are using VVR for replication and configuring an additional DR site, verify the heartbeat and replication configuration between all sites.
- If you are using VVR for replication and chose to start replication manually in the DR wizard, to avoid replicating large amounts of data over the network the first time, then you will need to start the process necessary to synchronize from checkpoint. This typically consists of
  - starting a VVR replication checkpoint

- performing a block level backup
- ending the VVR replication checkpoint
- restoring the block level backup at the DR site
- starting replication from the VVR replication checkpoint

To learn more about the process of starting replication from a checkpoint, refer to the *Veritas Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide*.

- Do not attempt a wide area failover until data has been replicated and the state is consistent and up to date. The Solutions Configuration Center provides a Fire Drill Wizard to test wide area failover for VVR-based replication.

## Establishing secure communication within the global cluster (optional)

A global cluster is created in non-secure mode by default. You may continue to allow the global cluster to run in non-secure mode or choose to establish secure communication between clusters.

The following prerequisites are required for establishing secure communication within a global cluster:

- The clusters within the global cluster must be running in secure mode.
- You must have Administrator privileges for the domain.

The following information is required for adding secure communication to a global cluster:

- The active host name or IP address of each cluster in the global configuration.
- The user name and password of the administrator for each cluster in the configuration.
- If the local clusters do not point to the same root broker, the host name and port address of each root broker.

Adding secure communication involves the following tasks:

- Taking the ClusterService-Proc (wac) resource in the ClusterService group offline on the clusters in the global environment.
- Adding the -secure option to the StartProgram attribute on each node.
- Establishing trust between root brokers if the local clusters do not point to the same root broker.

- Bringing the ClusterService-Proc (wac) resource online on the clusters in the global cluster.

**To take the ClusterService-Proc (wac) resource offline on all clusters**

- 1 From Cluster Monitor, log on to a cluster in the global cluster.
- 2 In the **Service Groups** tab of the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, expand the **ClusterService** group and the Process agent.
- 3 Right-click the **ClusterService-Proc** resource, click **Offline**, and click the appropriate system from the menu.
- 4 Repeat step 1 to step 3 for the additional clusters in the global cluster.

**To add the -secure option to the StartProgram resource**

- 1 In the **Service Groups** tab of the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, right-click the **ClusterService-Proc** resource under the **Process** type in the **ClusterService** group.
- 2 Click **View**, and then **Properties** view.
- 3 Click the Edit icon to edit the **StartProgram** attribute.
- 4 In the Edit Attribute dialog box, add `-secure` switch to the path of the executable Scalar Value.  
 For example:  

```
"C:\Program Files\Veritas\Cluster Server\bin\wac.exe"
-secure
```
- 5 Repeat step 4 for each system in the cluster.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the Edit Attribute dialog box.
- 7 Click the **Save and Close Configuration** icon in the tool bar.
- 8 Repeat step 1 to step 7 for each cluster in the global cluster.

**To establish trust between root brokers if there is more than one root broker**

- ◆ Establishing trust between root brokers is only required if the local clusters do not point to the same root broker.  
 Log on to the root broker for each cluster and set up trust to the other root brokers in the global cluster. The complete syntax of the command is:  

```
vssat setuptrust --broker <host:port> --securitylevel <low|medium|high> [--hashfile <filename> | --hash <root hash in hex>]
```

 For example, to establish trust with a low security level in a global cluster comprised of Cluster1 pointing to RB1 and Cluster2 pointing to RB2: from RB1, type:

```
vssat setuptrust --broker RB2:14141 --securitylevel low  
from RB2, type:  
vssat setuptrust --broker RB1:14141 --securitylevel low
```

To bring the ClusterService-Proc (wac) resource online on all clusters

- 1 In the **Service Groups** tab of the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, expand the **ClusterService** group and the Process agent.
- 2 Right-click the **ClusterService-Proc** resource, click **Online**, and click the appropriate system from the menu.
- 3 Repeat step 1 and step 2 for the additional clusters in the global cluster.

## Adding multiple DR sites (optional)

In a Veritas Volume Replicator replication environment only, you can use the DR wizard to add additional secondary DR sites. Veritas Cluster Server supports up to four DR sites. In other replication environments, additional DR sites require manual configuration.

Run the DR wizard and on the Secondary System selection panel, select the new site.

Before you start the wizard on the task of configuring replication and global clustering, ensure that the cluster service group is online at the existing primary and secondary sites. This enables the wizard to configure GCO not only between the selected primary site and the new secondary site but also between the new site and the earlier configured secondary site. Otherwise, the wizard displays a warning message after the global clustering task.

When configuring the VVR replication settings with the wizard for the additional site, fields that must match existing settings are dimmed so that you cannot change them. For example, you cannot change the RVG name or RVG layout on the Replication Settings panel. Similarly, on the Global Cluster Settings panel, GCO has already been configured at the primary site, so the primary site fields are dimmed.

# Recovery procedures for service group dependencies

Service group dependencies have special requirements and limitations for disaster recovery configuration and for actions to be taken in a disaster recovery scenario.

See “[Supported disaster recovery configurations for service group dependencies](#)” on page 103.

The procedure and requirements for bringing service group dependencies online at the secondary site depends on their configuration: soft, firm, or hard.

In general, if a child or parent remains online at the primary site, you take it offline before you bring the child and parent service groups online in the correct order on the secondary site.

An exception is the RVG service group, used for VVR replication, which the wizard creates with an online, local, hard dependency. The RVG group remains online at the primary site in all cases and should be left online at the primary site.

The following tables show the recovery requirements if a child or parent service group fails at the primary site and is unable to fail over on the primary site, thus requiring the secondary site to be brought online.

Using a scenario of a parent and one child, the following table shows the expected results and necessary actions you must take for an online, local, soft dependency link.

**Table 10-2** Online, local, soft dependency link

Failure condition	Results	Action required
The child service group fails	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The parent remains online on the primary site.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Primary site: Manually take the parent service group offline at the primary site. Leave the RVG group online.</li> <li>2 Secondary site: Bring the parent and child service groups online in the appropriate order (child first, then parent).</li> </ol>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ An alert notification at the secondary site occurs for the child service group only.</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The RVG group remains online.</li> </ul>	

**Table 10-2** Online, local, soft dependency link

Failure condition	Results	Action required
The parent service group fails	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The child remains online on the primary site.</li> <li>■ An alert notification at the secondary site occurs for the parent only.</li> <li>■ The RVG group remains online.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Primary site: Manually take the child service group offline at the primary site. Leave the RVG group online.</li> <li>2 Secondary site: Bring the service groups online in the appropriate order (child first, then parent).</li> </ol>

Using a scenario of a parent and one child, the following table shows the expected results and necessary actions you must take for an online, local, firm dependency link.

**Table 10-3** Online, local, firm dependency link

Failure condition	Results	Action required
The child service group fails	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The parent goes offline on the primary site.</li> <li>■ An alert notification at the secondary site occurs for the child service group only.</li> <li>■ The RVG group remains online.</li> </ul>	<p>Secondary site: Bring the service groups online in the appropriate order (child first, then parent).                      Leave the RVG group online at the primary site.</p>
The parent service group fails	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The child remains online on the primary site.</li> <li>■ An alert notification at the secondary site occurs for the parent only.</li> <li>■ The RVG group remains online.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Primary site: Manually take the child service group offline at the primary site. Leave the RVG group online.</li> <li>2 Secondary site: Bring the service groups online in the appropriate order (child first, then parent).</li> </ol>

Using a scenario of a parent and one child, the following table shows the expected results and necessary actions you must take for an online, local, hard dependency link.

**Table 10-4** Online, local, hard dependency link

Failure condition	Results	Action required
The child service group fails	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The parent goes offline on the primary site.</li> <li>■ An alert notification at the secondary site occurs for the child service group only.</li> <li>■ The RVG group remains online.</li> </ul>	<p>Secondary site: Bring the service groups online in the appropriate order (child first, then parent).</p> <p>Do not take the RVG group offline at the primary site.</p>
The parent service group fails	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The child remains online on the primary site.</li> <li>■ An alert notification at the secondary site occurs for the parent only.</li> <li>■ The RVG group remains online.</li> </ul>	<p>1 Primary site: Manually take the child service group offline at the primary site. Leave the RVG group online.</p> <p>2 Secondary site: Bring the service groups online in the appropriate order (child first, then parent).</p>



# Testing fault readiness by running a fire drill

Topics in this chapter include:

- [About disaster recovery fire drills](#)
- [About the Fire Drill Wizard](#)
- [About post-fire drill scripts](#)
- [Tasks for configuring and running fire drills](#)
- [Prerequisites for a fire drill](#)
- [Preparing the fire drill configuration](#)
- [Running a fire drill](#)
- [Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed](#)
- [Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state](#)
- [Deleting the fire drill configuration](#)

## About disaster recovery fire drills

A disaster recovery plan should include regular testing of an environment to ensure that a DR solution is effective and ready should disaster strike. This testing is called a fire drill.

A fire drill is performed at the secondary site using a special service group for fire drills. The fire drill service group uses a copy of the data that is used by the application service group.

## About the Fire Drill Wizard

Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows (SFW HA) provides a Fire Drill Wizard to help you set up and run a fire drill on a disaster recovery environment. You launch the Fire Drill Wizard from the Solutions Configuration Center.

The Fire Drill Wizard tests the fault readiness of a disaster recovery configuration by mimicking a failover from the primary site to the secondary site. The wizard does this without stopping the application at the primary site and disrupting user access.

The Fire Drill Wizard supports conducting a fire drill for a disaster recovery site that uses Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) or that uses Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF hardware replication.

## About Fire Drill Wizard general operations

The Fire Drill Wizard performs the following operations:

- Prepares for the fire drill by creating a fire drill service group on the secondary site  
The fire drill service group is a copy of the application service group. When creating the fire drill service group, the wizard uses the application service group name, with the suffix `_fd`. The wizard renames the fire drill service group resources by adding a prefix `FD $nn$`  and changes attribute values as necessary to refer to the FD resources.  
The wizard also supports fire drill service groups created under a different naming convention by an earlier version of the wizard.
- Runs the fire drill by bringing the fire drill service group online on the secondary site  
This operation demonstrates the ability of the application service group to failover and come online at the secondary site should the need arise. Fire drill service groups do not interact with outside clients or with other instances of resources, so they can safely come online even when the application service group is online on the primary site.
- Restores the fire drill configuration, taking the fire drill service group offline  
After you complete the fire drill, you run the wizard to restore the fire drill configuration to a prepared state. Otherwise, the fire drill service group

remains online. If you run a fire drill on one service group, restore that service group before you continue with a fire drill on another service group. You must also restore the fire drill configuration before you can delete it.

---

**Warning:** If the fire drill service group remains online, it could cause failures in your environment. For example, if the application service group were to fail over to the node hosting the fire drill service group, there would be resource conflicts, resulting in both service groups faulting. Therefore, always use the wizard to restore the fire drill configuration to a prepared state as soon as possible after completing the fire drill testing for a service group.

See “[Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state](#)” on page 319.

---

- Deletes the fire drill configuration

The details of some Fire Drill Wizard operations are different depending on the replication environment.

See “[About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a VVR environment](#)” on page 299.

See “[About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment](#)” on page 300.

## About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a VVR environment

The general operations of the Fire Drill Wizard are the same in all replication environments.

- Prepares for the fire drill, creating a fire drill service group on the secondary site
- Runs the fire drill, bringing the fire drill service group online on the secondary site
- Restores the fire drill configuration, taking the fire drill service group offline
- Deletes the fire drill configuration

See “[About the Fire Drill Wizard](#)” on page 298.

However, the following additional Fire Drill Wizard operations are specific to a Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) environment.

### Preparing the fire drill configuration

In a VVR environment, when preparing the fire drill configuration, the wizard does the following:

- In the fire drill service group, replaces the RVGPrimary resources with VMDg resources
- Uses the SFW HA VxSnap feature to prepare snapshot mirrors for use during the fire drill  
You assign one or more disks for the mirrored volumes while running the wizard. Mirror preparation can take some time, so you can exit the wizard once this step is started and let the preparation continue in the background.

## Running the fire drill

In a VVR environment, when running the fire drill, the wizard does the following:

- Detaches the mirrors from the original volumes to create point-in-time snapshots of the production data
- Creates a fire drill disk group on the secondary site with a snapshot of the application data to use for testing purposes

## Restoring the fire drill configuration

In a VVR environment, when restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state, the wizard does the following:

- Takes the fire drill service group offline
- Disables the fire drill service group resources
- Imports the fire drill disk group
- Joins the fire drill disk group to the application service group disk group
- Snaps back the snapshot mirrors to reattach to the original volumes

## Deleting the fire drill configuration

In a VVR environment, when deleting the fire drill configuration, the wizard does the following:

- Deletes the fire drill service group and any associated registry entry
- Performs the snap abort operation on the snapshot mirrors to free up the disk space

## About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment

The general operations of the Fire Drill Wizard are the same in all replication environments.

- Prepares for the fire drill, creating a fire drill service group on the secondary site
- Runs the fire drill, bringing the fire drill service group online on the secondary site
- Restores the fire drill configuration, taking the fire drill service group offline
- Deletes the fire drill configuration

See “[About the Fire Drill Wizard](#)” on page 298.

However, additional Fire Drill Wizard operations are specific to a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF replication environment.

In a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF replication environment, the wizard performs the following additional actions during preparation, running of the fire drill, restoring the configuration, and deleting the configuration. You must configure the ShadowImage (for Hitachi) or BCV (for SRDF) pairs before running the wizard.

## Preparing the fire drill configuration

When preparing the fire drill configuration, the wizard does the following:

- In the fire drill service group, the wizard creates HTCSnap or SRDFSnap resources for each HTC and SRDF resource in the application service group. The SRDFSnap and HTCSnap resources from the fire drill service group are linked to the respective resources configured in the main application service group.
- The wizard configures the Snap resource. The following Snap resource attributes are set to a value of 1:
  - UseSnapshot (take a local snapshot of the target array)
  - RequireSnapshot (require a successful snapshot for the Snap resource to come online)
  - MountSnapshot (use the snapshot to bring the fire drill service group online)

## Running the fire drill

When running the fire drill, the wizard brings the HTCSnap or SRDFSnap agent online. The HTCSnap or SRDFSnap agent manage the replication and mirroring functionality according to the attribute settings. The Snap agents take a consistent snapshot of the replicating data using the mirroring technology provided by the array vendor. The Snap agents also import the disk group present on the snapshot devices with a different name.

In more detail, the Snap agent does the following:

- Suspends replication to get a consistent snapshot
- For HTCSnap, takes a snapshot of the replicating application data on a ShadowImage device
- For SRDFSnap, takes a snapshot of the replicating application data on a BCV device
- Resumes replication
- Modifies the disk group name in the snapshot

## Restoring the fire drill configuration

When restoring the fire drill configuration to a prepared state, the wizard does the following:

- Takes the fire drill service group offline, thus also taking offline the SRDF and HTC Snap agents  
This action reattaches the hardware mirrors to the replicating secondary devices and resynchronizes them.

## Deleting the fire drill configuration

When deleting the fire drill configuration, the wizard does the following:

- Deletes the fire drill service group
- Deletes any associated registry entry

If you want to remove the hardware mirrors, you must do so manually.

For more information about the Hitachi TrueCopy Snap agent functions, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for Hitachi TrueCopy, Configuration Guide*.

For more information about the EMC SRDF Snap agent functions, see *Veritas Cluster Server Hardware Replication Agent for EMC SRDF, Configuration Guide*.

# About post-fire drill scripts

You can specify a script for the Fire Drill Wizard to run on the secondary site at the end of the fire drill.

For example, in a SQL Server environment, if you create and populate a test table at the primary site, you could create a script to verify replication of the data.

For the wizard to run the script, the script must exist on the secondary system that you are specifying for the fire drill.

---

**Note:** The wizard does not support using script commands to launch a user interface window. In such a case, the process is created but the UI window does not display.

---

Optionally, you can specify to run a Windows PowerShell cmdlet. To run a cmdlet, create a .bat file with the following entry:

```
%windir%\system32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\PowerShell.exe -command "$ScriptName"
```

Where

ScriptName = .ps1 script (fully qualified) / cmdlet entered by user.

For example:

```
D:\WINDOWS\system32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\PowerShell.exe -command  
C:\myTest.ps1
```

Specify the name of the .bat file as the script to run.

## Tasks for configuring and running fire drills

While running the Fire Drill Wizard, the following sequence of actions are available:

- Prepare the fire drill configuration
- Run the fire drill or delete the configuration
- Restore the fire drill configuration after running a fire drill
- Run another fire drill or delete the configuration

In addition, you have the option to recreate a fire drill configuration that has changed.

After an action is complete, the next action becomes available in the wizard. You can select the next action or exit the wizard and perform the next action later.

[Table 11-1](#) gives more details of the process of configuring and running fire drills with the wizard.

**Table 11-1** Process for configuring and running fire drills

Action	Description
Verify the hardware and software prerequisites	Before running the wizard, review the prerequisites and make sure that they are met.  See <a href="#">“Prerequisites for a fire drill”</a> on page 306.
Prepare the fire drill configuration	Use the wizard to configure the fire drill.  See <a href="#">“Preparing the fire drill configuration”</a> on page 309.
Recreate a fire drill configuration that has changed	If a fire drill configuration exists for the selected service group, the wizard checks for differences between the fire drill service group and the application service group. If differences are found, the wizard can recreate the fire drill configuration before running the fire drill.  See <a href="#">“Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed”</a> on page 317.

**Table 11-1** Process for configuring and running fire drills

Action	Description
Run the fire drill	<p>Use the wizard to run the fire drill. Running the fire drill brings the fire drill service group online. Optionally you can specify a script to be run once the fire drill is complete.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Running a fire drill”</a> on page 315.</p> <p>Perform your own tests of the application to confirm that it is operational</p> <p><b>Note:</b> After completing the fire drill testing, run the wizard again as soon as possible to restore the configuration. Otherwise the fire drill service group remain online. Be sure to restore one fire drill service group to a prepared state before running a fire drill on another service group.</p>
Restore the fire drill configuration to a prepared state	<p>Use the wizard to restore the fire drill system to a state of readiness for future fire drills or to prepare for removal of the fire drill configuration</p> <p>This is a required action after running the fire drill.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state”</a> on page 319.</p> <p>This operation reattaches snapshot mirrors and takes the fire drill service group offline.</p>
Delete the fire drill configuration	<p>If a fire drill service group is no longer needed, or if you want to free up resources, use the wizard to remove the fire drill configuration</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Deleting the fire drill configuration”</a> on page 320.</p> <p>The wizard deletes the service group on the secondary site. In a VVR environment, the wizard performs a snap abort to delete the snapshot mirrors created on the secondary site for use in the fire drill. In hardware replication environments, you can delete these manually.</p> <p>If a fire drill has been run, the wizard ensures that you first restore the fire drill configuration to a prepared state before this option becomes available. This ensures that mirrors are reattached and the fire drill service group is offline before the configuration is deleted.</p>

## Prerequisites for a fire drill

Before running the Fire Drill Wizard make sure that you meet the following general requirements:

- You can run the Fire Drill Wizard from any node in the domain of the cluster, as long as the SFW HA client is installed on that node.
- If the cluster is secured, the login you use to run the Fire Drill Wizard must have the appropriate permissions to make changes in the cluster.
- If a firewall exists between the wizard and any systems it needs access to, the firewall must be set to allow both ingoing and outgoing TCP requests on port 7419.

- For each IP address in the application service group, an IP address must be available to use on the secondary site for the fire drill service group.

The wizard can accept input for one IP address and Lanman resource. If the application service group has multiple IP addresses and Lanman resources, the wizard notifies you to edit the fire drill service group resources to supply these values. Information on editing service group resources is covered in the VCS administration guide.

See *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

- If you want the fire drill wizard to run a script that you supply, ensure that the script file is available on any secondary site nodes where you plan to run the fire drill.

For testing purposes, you may want to create and populate a new table from the active node at the primary site. After you run the fire drill to bring the fire drill service group online and create the fire drill snapshots, you can check that the table and its data were replicated and are available from the fire drill service group. You can automate this process with a script and when preparing to run the fire drill, specify it as a post-fire drill script.

Additional requirements apply to specific replication environments.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill in a VVR environment”](#) on page 306.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill in a Hitachi TrueCopy environment”](#) on page 307.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill in an EMC SRDF environment”](#) on page 308.

## Prerequisites for a fire drill in a VVR environment

Before you run the Fire Drill Wizard make sure that you meet both the general requirements and the specific requirements for your replication environment.

General requirements are covered separately.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill”](#) on page 306.

Make sure that the following additional prerequisites are met before configuring and running a fire drill in a Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) environment:

- The primary and secondary sites must be fully configured with VVR replication and the global cluster option.
- The Veritas FlashSnap option must be installed on all nodes of the secondary site cluster.
- The secondary system where you plan to run the fire drill must have access to the replicated volumes.
- On the secondary site, empty disks must be available with enough disk space to create snapshot mirrors of the volumes. Snapshot mirrors take up the same amount of space as the original volumes. In addition, two disk change object (DCO) volumes are created for each snapshot mirror, one for the source volume and one for the snapshot volume. The two DCO volumes must be on different disks. Allow 2 MB additional space for each DCO volume.

The empty disks must be in the same disk group that contains the RVG. If the disk group does not have empty disks available, you must use the VEA to add the disks to the disk group before you run the wizard. The secondary system must have access to the disks or LUNs.

- All disk groups in the service group must be configured for replication. The Fire Drill wizard does not support a VVR configuration in which disk groups are excluded from replication. However, you can exclude individual volumes within a disk group from replication.

## Prerequisites for a fire drill in a Hitachi TrueCopy environment

Before you run the Fire Drill Wizard make sure that you meet both the general requirements and the specific requirements for your replication environment.

General requirements are covered separately.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill”](#) on page 306.

Make sure that the following prerequisites are met before configuring and running a fire drill in a Hitachi TrueCopy environment:

- The primary and secondary sites must be fully configured with Hitachi TrueCopy replication and the global cluster option. The configuration must follow the applicable instructions in the Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows documentation for configuring disaster recovery with Hitachi TrueCopy.

- The secondary system where you plan to run the fire drill must have access to the replicated volumes.
- Make sure that Hitachi RAID Manager/Command Control Interface (CCI) is installed.
- ShadowImage for TrueCopy must be installed and configured for each LUN on the secondary site target array. ShadowImage pairs must be created to allow for mirroring at the secondary site.
- The name of the ShadowImage device group must be the same as the replicated device group for both replicated and non-replicated LUNs that are to be snapshot. The instance number should be different.
- Make sure the HORCM instance managing the S-VOLs runs continuously; the agent does not start this instance.

## Prerequisites for a fire drill in an EMC SRDF environment

Before you run the Fire Drill Wizard make sure that you meet both the general requirements and the specific requirements for your replication environment.

General requirements are covered separately.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill”](#) on page 306.

Make sure that the following prerequisites are met before configuring and running a fire drill in an EMC SRDF environment:

- The primary and secondary sites must be fully configured with EMC SRDF replication and the global cluster option. The configuration must follow the applicable instructions in the Veritas Storage Foundation HA for Windows documentation for configuring disaster recovery with EMC SRDF.
- The secondary system where you plan to run the fire drill must have access to the replicated volumes.
- The infrastructure to take snapshots at the secondary site must be properly configured between the secondary site source and target arrays. This process involves associating Symmetric Business Continuance Volumes (BCVs) and synchronizing them with the secondary site source.
- If you plan to run a fire drill on SRDF/A devices, you must have a TimeFinder/CG license. Make sure TimeFinder for SRDF is installed and configured at the target array.
- To take snapshots of R2 devices, BCVs must be associated with the RDF2 device group and fully established with the devices.
- To take snapshots of non-replicated devices, create a EMC Symmetrix device group with the same name as the SFW disk group. The device group must

contain the same devices as in the disk group and have the corresponding BCVs associated.

## Preparing the fire drill configuration

Preparing the fire drill configuration creates a fire drill service group. You specify the application service group and the secondary system to use. Only one service group can be prepared for a fire drill at one time.

For a Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) environment, the preparation step also prepares snapshot mirrors of production data at the specified node on the secondary site.

---

**Note:** Preparing the snapshot mirrors takes some time to complete.

---

Before you prepare the fire drill configuration with the Fire Drill Wizard, make sure that you meet the prerequisites.

See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill”](#) on page 306.

### To prepare the fire drill configuration

- 1 Open the Solutions Configuration Center (**Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Solutions Configuration Center**).
- 2 Start the Fire Drill Wizard (expand **Solutions for Microsoft SQL**, expand **Fire Drill**, expand **Configure or run a fire drill**, and click **Fire Drill Wizard**).
- 3 In the Welcome panel, review the information and click **Next**.
- 4 In the System Selection panel, specify a system in the primary site cluster and click **Next**.  
See [“System Selection panel details”](#) on page 311.
- 5 In the Service Group Selection panel, select the service group that you want to use for the fire drill and click **Next**.  
See [“Service Group Selection panel details”](#) on page 311.
- 6 In the Secondary System Selection panel, select the cluster and the system to be used for the fire drill at the secondary site, and then click **Next**.  
See [“Secondary System Selection panel details”](#) on page 311.
- 7 If the Fire Drill Prerequisites panel is displayed, review the information and ensure that all prerequisites are met. Click **Next**.  
See [“Prerequisites for a fire drill”](#) on page 306.

Otherwise, if a fire drill service group already exists on this system for the specified service group, one of the following panels is displayed:

If the Run Fire Drill option or Delete Fire Drill options are shown, a fire drill service group has already been prepared. You can run the fire drill with no further preparation. Click **Run Fire Drill** and follow the procedure for running a fire drill. See [“Running a fire drill”](#) on page 315.

If the Fire Drill Restoration panel is displayed, the fire drill service group remains online from a previous fire drill. Follow the procedure for restoring the fire drill configuration to a prepared state. This must be done before running a new fire drill. See [“Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state”](#) on page 319.

If the Recreate Fire Drill Service Group panel is displayed, a fire drill service group has already been prepared but is not up to date. You can choose to recreate the fire drill configuration to bring it up to date. See [“Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed”](#) on page 317. Or you can clear the check box to recreate the configuration and run the fire drill on the existing configuration.

- 8 If the Fire Drill Service Group Settings panel is displayed, assign the virtual IP address and virtual name (Lanman name) to be used for the fire drill service group that will be created on the secondary site. See [“Fire Drill Service Group Settings panel details”](#) on page 312.
- 9 The wizard selects the appropriate panel to display next, depending on the replication method. Fill in any required information on the panel that is displayed.

VVR replication      Disk Selection panel  
See [“Disk Selection panel details”](#) on page 312.

Hitachi TrueCopy replication      Horcm Files Path Selection panel  
See [“Hitachi TrueCopy Path Information panel details”](#) on page 313.

HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel  
See [“HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel details”](#) on page 313.

EMC SRDF  
replication

SRDFSnap Resource Configuration panel  
See [“SRDFSnap Resource Configuration panel details”](#) on  
page 314.

Click **Next**.

- 10 In the Fire Drill Preparation panel, the wizard shows the status of the preparation tasks.  
See [“Fire Drill Preparation panel details”](#) on page 314.  
When preparation is complete, click **Next**.
- 11 The Summary panel displays the message that preparation is complete.  
To run the fire drill now, click **Next**. Continue with the procedure to run the fire drill.  
See [“Running a fire drill”](#) on page 315.  
To run the fire drill later, click **Finish**. The fire drill preparation remains in place.

## System Selection panel details

Use the System Selection panel of the wizard to specify a system in the primary site cluster.

All systems containing online global service groups are available to select. The default system is the node where you launched the wizard (localhost) if a global service group is online on that system. When selecting a system you can specify either a fully qualified host name or IP address.

## Service Group Selection panel details

Use the Service Group Selection panel of the wizard to select the service group that you want to use for the fire drill. You can select only one service group at a time for a fire drill.

## Secondary System Selection panel details

Use the Secondary System Selection panel of the wizard to select the cluster and the system to be used for the fire drill at the secondary site.

The selected system must have access to the replicated data.

The system must have access to disks for the snapshots that will be created for the fire drill.

## Fire Drill Service Group Settings panel details

Use the Fire Drill Service Group Settings panel of the wizard to assign the virtual IP address and virtual name (Lanman name) to be used for the fire drill service group that will be created on the secondary site. These must be an address and name not currently in use.

If the service group contains more than one IP and Lanman resource, this panel does not display. After the fire drill service group is created, the wizard notifies you to manually update the IP and Lanman resources in the fire drill service group.

## Disk Selection panel details

During fire drill preparation in a VVR replication environment, you must ensure that information is available to the wizard for creating the fire drill snapshots. Use the Disk Selection panel of the wizard to review the information on disks and volumes and make the selections for the fire drill snapshots, as follows:

Volume	Select the volumes for the fire drill snapshots. By default all volumes associated with the service group are selected. If you deselect a volume that might result in the fire drill service group failing to come online, the wizard displays a warning message.  <b>Note:</b> The Disk Selection panel also appears if the wizard is recreating a fire drill service group to which volumes have been added. In that case, only the new volumes are shown for selection.
Disk Group	Shows the name of the disk group that contains the original volumes. This field is display only.

Fire Drill DG	Shows the name of the fire drill disk group that running the fire drill will create on the secondary system to contain the snapshots. This field is display only. For the fire drill disk group name, the wizard prefixes the original disk group name with <i>FDnn</i> .
Disk	<p>Click the plus icon to the right of the Disk column and specify the disk to be used for the snapshot volume. Repeat for each row that contains a selected volume.</p> <p>You can store multiple snapshot volumes on the same disk, if the production volumes reside on disks in the same disk group.</p> <p>If there is not enough disk space, you can use the Veritas Enterprise Administrator to add disks to the disk group. Then click the <b>Refresh</b> button in the wizard.</p>
Mount Details	Shows the mount details for the snapshot volumes on the secondary system, which match the mounts for the production volumes. This field is display only.

## Hitachi TrueCopy Path Information panel details

During fire drill preparation in a Hitachi TrueCopy replication environment, the Hitachi TrueCopy Path Information panel is displayed.

The wizard populates the path field with the customary default location:

C:\Windows

where C is the system drive.

If the horcm configuration files are in a different location, edit the field to specify that location.

## HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel details

During fire drill preparation in a Hitachi TrueCopy replication environment, the wizard discovers the HTC resources and non-replicating SFW disk groups in the application service group

This information is used to configure the HTCSnap resources.

The wizard lists each HTCSnap resource that will be configured. You can clear the HTCSnap resource name check box if you do not want to include its dependent disk groups in the fire drill.

You must specify the ShadowImage instance.

The HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel shows the following:

Target Resource Name	The panel shows the HTC resource name in the case of a Replication Device Group or the disk group resource name in the case of a non-replicating disk group.
ShadowImage Instance ID	For every HTC resource, specify the ID of the ShadowImage instance associated with the replicating secondary devices.
Refresh	If you click the Refresh button, the wizard rediscovers and validates the HTC configuration.

More information about HTCSnap resource configuration and operation is available.

See “[About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment](#)” on page 300.

## SRDFSnap Resource Configuration panel details

During fire drill preparation in an EMC SRDF replication environment, the wizard validates whether at least one BCV device is attached to every device (RDF2) of the SRDF device group. If not, the wizard displays an informational message on this panel. The panel shows as the Target Resource Name the name of the resource that is managing the LUNs that you want to snapshot. For data being replicated from the primary site, the Target Resource Name is the name of the SRDF resource. For data that is not replicated, the Target Resource Name is the name of the disk group resource.

For example, in a typical Microsoft SQL Server setup, you might replicate data files and logs, but you may choose to avoid replicating temporary tempdb. The tempdb must still exist at the DR site and may be part of its own disk group.

The wizard lists each SRDFSnap resource that will be configured. You can clear the SRDFSnap resource name check box if you do not want to include its dependent disk groups in the fire drill.

More information about SRDFSnap resource configuration and operation is available.

See “[About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment](#)” on page 300.

## Fire Drill Preparation panel details

After you enter the information required to prepare a fire drill configuration, the Fire Drill Preparation panel is displayed. You wait while the wizard completes the preparation tasks.

The fire drill service group is created on the secondary site (but remains offline). In addition, for a VVR replication environment, the snapshot mirrors for the volumes are prepared; this can take some time. You may want to minimize the wizard while the task runs in the background. You can also track the mirror preparation progress in the VEA. When done, the wizard displays a message that the fire drill preparation is complete. If the wizard is completing the preparation steps as part of recreating a fire drill configuration, snapshot mirrors are prepared only for new volumes.

See [“Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed”](#) on page 317.

## Running a fire drill

After you complete the initial fire drill preparation step using the Fire Drill Wizard, you can run the fire drill immediately without exiting the wizard or run the wizard later to run the fire drill.

Running the fire drill does the following:

- Creates the snapshots
- Enables the fire drill resources
- Brings the fire drill service group online
- Optionally, executes a specified command to run a script  
See [“About post-fire drill scripts”](#) on page 302.

For details on the operations that occur when running a fire drill, see the following topics:

- [“About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a VVR environment”](#) on page 299
- [“About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment”](#) on page 300

---

**Warning:** After running the fire drill, the fire drill service group remains online. After you verify the fire drill results, run the wizard again to restore the system to the prepared state. Otherwise, if the fire drill service group remains online, it could cause failures in your environment. For example, if the application service group were to fail over to the node hosting the fire drill service group, there would be resource conflicts, resulting in both service groups faulting. See [“Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state”](#) on page 319.

---

### To run a fire drill

- 1 If you completed the initial preparation and have not exited the wizard, or if you are returning to this procedure after recreating a fire drill service

group, go to [step 8](#). Otherwise, if you need to restart the wizard, continue with the next step.

- 2 From the Solutions Configuration Center, start the Fire Drill Wizard (expand **Solutions for Microsoft SQL**, expand **Fire Drill**, expand **Configure or run a fire drill**, and click **Fire Drill Wizard**).
- 3 In the Welcome panel, click **Next**.
- 4 In the System Selection panel, specify a system in the primary site cluster and click **Next**.
- 5 In the Service Group Selection panel, select the service group and click **Next**.
- 6 In the Secondary System Selection panel, specify the system previously prepared for the fire drill at the secondary site and click **Next**.  
If the fire drill configuration is in a prepared state, the wizard compares the resources of the fire drill service group with the resources of the application service group.
- 7 If the application service group changed since the fire drill configuration was prepared, the wizard displays the Recreate Fire Drill Service Group panel, showing the differences. Choose one of the following:
  - Leave the option checked to recreate the configuration before running the fire drill and click **Next**. You complete additional steps in the wizard before running the fire drill.  
For more information, see “[Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed](#)” on page 317.
  - To run the fire drill on the existing configuration, clear the option to recreate the fire drill service group and click **Next**.
- 8 In the Fire Drill Mode Selection panel, click **Run Fire Drill** and click **Next**.
- 9 In the Post Fire Drill Script panel, optionally specify the full path to a script for the wizard to run on the secondary system right after running the fire drill. The script must already exist on the secondary system. Click **Next**.  
See “[About post-fire drill scripts](#)” on page 302.
- 10 In the Fire Drill Implementation screen, wait until all fire drill tasks are performed and click **Next**. The Summary panel displays the message that the fire drill is complete. You can leave the wizard running while you verify the results or exit the wizard. To exit the wizard, click **Finish**.
- 11 Run your own tests to verify the fire drill results.

---

**Warning:** You should always restore the fire drill system to a prepared state immediately after completing fire drill testing on a service group.

---

- 12 Restore the fire drill configuration to the prepared state.  
See “[Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state](#)” on page 319.

## Recreating a fire drill configuration that has changed

When you run the Fire Drill wizard, a fire drill service group may already exist for the selected application service group. However, the application service group may have changed since the fire drill service group was created. Therefore, the wizard compares the resource names of the two service groups. If differences are found, the wizard lists them on the Recreate Fire Drill Service Group panel.

You have the following choices from the Recreate Fire Drill Service Group panel:

- Leave the option checked to recreate the fire drill service group.  
Proceed with using the wizard to recreate the configuration to match the application service group.  
The wizard deletes the existing fire drill configuration first, before creating the new one.  
For a VVR replication environment, the wizard handles existing volumes as follows: It does not delete the mirrors for volumes that still exist. When it recreates the fire drill configuration, it prepares new mirrors only for new volumes. If volumes have been removed, the wizard displays an additional option to snap abort the obsolete snapshot volumes to free up disk space.
- Clear the option to recreate the fire drill service group. You can then proceed with using the wizard to do either of the following:
  - Run the fire drill, ignoring the differences.
  - Delete the entire fire drill configuration. Then start over with preparing the fire drill configuration.

---

**Note:** The wizard does not check for changes in volume attributes, such as the MountPath attribute. For example, if you have a MountV resource with an attribute that points to drive Y and you change that attribute to point to drive X, the wizard does not identify this change and does not give the option to recreate the fire drill service group.

You can choose whether to manually edit the fire drill service group for such changes and then run the fire drill, ignore the differences, or delete the configuration and start over.

---

The following procedure describes the choice of recreating the fire drill configuration.

**To recreate the fire drill configuration if the service group has changed**

- 1 In the Recreate Fire Drill Service Group panel, leave the option checked to recreate the configuration before running the fire drill.  
For a VVR replication environment, if volumes have been removed, optionally select to snap abort the volumes.  
Click **Next**.
- 2 In the Fire Drill Mode Selection panel, Delete Fire Drill Configuration is selected. Click **Next**, and click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 3 The Fire Drill Deletion panel shows the progress of the deletion.  
For a VVR replication environment, the wizard leaves the existing fire drill snapshot volumes so that those snapshot mirrors do not have to be prepared again. If volumes were removed and you selected the option to snap abort, the wizard snap aborts the snapshots of those volumes.

---

**Warning:** If you close the wizard after deleting the fire drill configuration without continuing on to the fire drill preparation step, the information of the existing snapshot volumes is lost.

---

When all tasks are complete, click **Next**.

- 4 In the Fire Drill Prerequisites panel, review the information and ensure that all prerequisites are met. Click **Next**.  
See “[Prerequisites for a fire drill](#)” on page 306.
- 5 The wizard selects the appropriate panel to display next, depending on the replication method. Fill in any required information on the panel that is displayed.

VVR replication	If volumes have been added, the Disk Selection panel is displayed. Specify the information for the added volumes.  If there is not enough disk space, you can use the Veritas Enterprise Administrator to add disks to the disk group. Then click the Refresh button in the wizard.  See “ <a href="#">Disk Selection panel details</a> ” on page 312.
-----------------	--

Hitachi TrueCopy replication	<p>Horcm Files Path Selection panel</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Hitachi TrueCopy Path Information panel details”</a> on page 313.</p> <p>HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel</p> <p>See <a href="#">“HTCSnap Resource Configuration panel details”</a> on page 313.</p>
EMC SRDF replication	<p>SRDFSnap Resource Configuration panel</p> <p>See <a href="#">“SRDFSnap Resource Configuration panel details”</a> on page 314.</p>

Click **Next**.

- 6 The Fire Drill Preparation panel is displayed. Wait while the wizard recreates the fire drill service group.  
 For VVR replication environments, wait while the wizard starts mirror preparation.  
 Mirror creation can take some time. You may want to minimize the wizard while the task runs in the background. You can also close the wizard and track the mirror preparation progress in the VEA.
- 7 Once preparation is complete, click **Next**. The Summary page is displayed. To continue with running the fire drill, click **Next**.  
 See [“Running a fire drill”](#) on page 315.

## Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state

After running a fire drill and verifying the results, use the Fire Drill Wizard as soon as possible to restore the fire drill system at the secondary site to a prepared state. A prepared state is the initial fire drill configuration created by the wizard, in which the fire drill service group has been prepared but is offline. Restoring the fire drill system to a prepared state is required for any of the following:

- Making the secondary system available for failover of the application service group at the primary site.
- Running another fire drill.
- Deleting the fire drill configuration after a fire drill has been run.

For details on the operations that occur when restoring a fire drill configuration, see the following topics:

- [“About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a VVR environment”](#) on page 299

- [“About Fire Drill Wizard operations in a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment”](#) on page 300

#### To restore the fire drill system to a prepared state

- 1 If you completed running a fire drill and have not exited the wizard, go to [step 8](#). Otherwise, continue with the next step.
- 2 From the Solutions Configuration Center, start the Fire Drill Wizard (expand **Solutions for Microsoft SQL**, expand **Fire Drill**, expand **Configure or run a fire drill**, and click **Fire Drill Wizard**).
- 3 In the Welcome panel, click **Next**.
- 4 In the System Selection panel, specify a system in the primary site cluster and click **Next**.  
The default system is the node where you launched the wizard.
- 5 In the Service Group Selection panel, select the service group that was used for the fire drill and click **Next**.
- 6 In the Secondary System Selection panel, specify the system on which the fire drill was run at the secondary site.
- 7 In the Fire Drill Restoration Information panel, review the requirements for restoration and click **Next**.
- 8 In the Fire Drill Restoration screen, wait until the screen shows the restoration tasks are completed and click **Next**.
- 9 In the Summary screen, click **Next** if you want to delete the fire drill configuration. Otherwise click **Finish** to exit the wizard, leaving the fire drill configuration in a prepared state.

## Deleting the fire drill configuration

If you no longer need a fire drill configuration you can delete it.

Deleting a fire drill configuration deletes the fire drill service group on the secondary site.

In a VVR replication environment, deleting a fire drill configuration also performs a snap abort of the snapshot mirrors created on the secondary site for use in the fire drill. It frees up the disk space used for the snapshot mirrors for other use.

In a Hitachi TrueCopy or EMC SRDF environment, you could manually remove mirrors after the deletion is complete.

### To delete a fire drill configuration

- 1 If you have just used the wizard to prepare or restore a fire drill configuration and have not exited the wizard, go to [step 10](#). Otherwise continue with the next step.
- 2 From the Solutions Configuration Center, start the Fire Drill Wizard (expand **Solutions for Microsoft SQL**, expand **Fire Drill**, expand **Configure or run a fire drill**, and click **Fire Drill Wizard**).
- 3 In the Welcome panel, click **Next**.
- 4 In the System Selection panel, specify a system in the primary site cluster and click **Next**.  
The default system is the node where you launched the wizard.
- 5 In the Service Group Selection panel, select the service group that was used for the fire drill and click **Next**.
- 6 In the Secondary System Selection panel, specify the system on which the fire drill was run at the secondary site.
- 7 If the wizard detects that the fire drill service group is different from the application service group, it displays the Recreate Fire Drill Service Group panel. Clear the option to recreate the fire drill service group and click **Next**.
- 8 If the wizard detects that the fire drill service group is still online, the Fire Drill Restoration panel is displayed. Review the requirements for restoration and click **Next**.
- 9 In the Restore Fire Drill screen, wait until the screen shows the restoration tasks are completed. Then click **Next**.
- 10 In the Fire Drill Mode Selection panel, click **Delete Fire Drill Configuration** and click **Next**, and click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 11 The Fire Drill Deletion panel shows the progress of the deletion. Wait until all tasks are complete and then click **Next**.  
If errors occur while deleting the fire drill configuration, the wizard will list any incomplete steps so that you can complete them manually.
- 12 The Summary panel is displayed. Click **Finish**.

322 | Testing fault readiness by running a fire drill  
| **Deleting the fire drill configuration**

# Reference

This section contains the following chapter:

- [Configuring disaster recovery without the DR wizard](#)



# Configuring disaster recovery without the DR wizard

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Tasks for configuring disaster recovery without the DR wizard](#)
- [Guidelines for installing and configuring SFW HA and the cluster on the secondary site](#)
- [Creating a parallel environment on the secondary site](#)
- [Setting up the Replicated Data Sets \(RDS\)](#)
- [Creating the VVR RVG service group](#)
- [Configuring the global cluster option for wide-area failover](#)

## Tasks for configuring disaster recovery without the DR wizard

You can deploy disaster recovery manually without using the Solutions Configuration Center and the Disaster Recovery (DR) Wizard.

You first configure the high availability and SQL components on both sites. You can configure high availability for MSDTC either before or after configuring high availability for Microsoft SQL.

You then configure the following disaster recovery components: Veritas Volume Replicator and the Global Cluster Option.

Refer to the *Veritas Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide* for additional details on VVR.

You also have the choice of using array-based hardware replication for your disaster recovery solution. For information on configuring array-based hardware replication with VCS, see the VCS hardware agent documentation for the particular array you want to configure.

[Table A-1](#) outlines the high-level objectives and the tasks to complete each objective.

**Table A-1** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery

Action	Description
Verify that SQL Server has been configured for high availability at the primary site	Verify that SQL has been configured for high availability at the primary site See <a href="#">“Verifying your primary site configuration”</a> on page 247.
Install and configure SFW HA on the secondary site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Review the prerequisites</li> <li>■ Review the configuration</li> <li>■ Configure the network and storage</li> <li>■ Configure the disk groups and volumes for SQL</li> <li>■ Configure the cluster</li> </ul> <p><b>Caution:</b> Ensure that the name you assign to the secondary site cluster is different from the name assigned to the primary site cluster.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Guidelines for installing and configuring SFW HA and the cluster on the secondary site”</a> on page 329.</p>
(Secure cluster only) Assign user privileges	For a secure cluster only, assign user privileges See <a href="#">“Assigning user privileges (secure clusters only)”</a> on page 255.
Install and configure SQL Server on the first cluster node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Install and configure SQL Server</li> <li>■ Set SQL Server services to manual start</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 153.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node”</a> on page 155.</p>

**Table A-1** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Install and configure SQL Server on the failover node(s)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stopping SQL Server services on the first node</li> <li>■ Ensuring that the disk group and volumes are mounted on the second or additional node</li> <li>■ Follow the guidelines for installing SQL Server on failover nodes in the SFW HA environment</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node”</a> on page 157.</p>
Perform additional configuration steps for multiple instances or disaster recovery configuration	<p>See <a href="#">“Completing configuration steps in SQL Server”</a> on page 162.</p>
Configure the service group on the secondary site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Before you begin to configure the service group on the secondary site, offline the SQL Server resource, the SQL virtual server name resource, the MSSearch resource (if present), and the SQL virtual IP resource on the primary site. The remaining resources should be online, including the VMDg resource.</li> <li>■ Create a SQL Server service group using the VCS SQL Server Configuration Wizard The service group name, virtual computer name, and IP address must be the same on both the primary site and secondary site.</li> <li>■ For an active-active SQL configuration, ensure that the priority order of the systems in the service group for each instance is set up in reverse order</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group”</a> on page 164.</p>
Set up the replication prerequisites	<p>Ensure that replication prerequisites for your selected method of replication are met before running the DR wizard</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting up security for VVR”</a> on page 248.</p>
Set up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS)	<p>Use the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard from Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) to create RDS and start replication for the primary and secondary sites</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS)”</a> on page 331.</p>

**Table A-1** Configuring the secondary site for disaster recovery (Continued)

Action	Description
Create the service group for the replicated volume group (RVG)	<p>Use the VVR Configuration Wizard to create a replication service group for the replicated volume group</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Creating the VVR RVG service group”</a> on page 343.</p>
Configure the global cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Link clusters (add a remote cluster to a local cluster)</li> <li>■ Convert the application service group that is common to all the clusters to a global service group</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">“Configuring the global cluster option for wide-area failover”</a> on page 347.</p>
Verify the disaster recovery configuration	<p>Verify that the secondary site has been fully configured for disaster recovery</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Verifying the disaster recovery configuration”</a> on page 288.</p>
(Optional) Add secure communication	<p>Add secure communication between local clusters within the global cluster (optional task)</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Establishing secure communication within the global cluster (optional)”</a> on page 290.</p>
Handling service group dependencies after failover	<p>If your environment includes dependent service groups, review the considerations for bringing the service groups online after failover to the secondary site</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Recovery procedures for service group dependencies”</a> on page 293.</p>

# Guidelines for installing and configuring SFW HA and the cluster on the secondary site

Use the following guidelines for installing and configuring SFW HA on the secondary site:

- Review the prerequisites.  
 See [“Reviewing the requirements”](#) on page 72.  
 During the configuration process you will create virtual IP addresses. The virtual IP address for the SQL virtual server at the primary and disaster recovery site can be the same if both sites can exist on the same network segment. Otherwise, you need to allocate one IP address for the virtual server at the primary site and a different IP address for the virtual server at the disaster recovery site.
- Review the disaster recovery configuration.  
 See [“Reviewing the disaster recovery configuration”](#) on page 100.
- Ensure that you have set up the components required to run a cluster.  
 See [“Configuring the storage hardware and network”](#) on page 108.
- Ensure that when installing SFW HA you install the appropriate disaster recovery options at both the primary and secondary sites. Be sure to select the following installation options as appropriate for your environment:

Veritas Cluster Server Database Agent for SQL	Required to configure high availability for SQL Server.
Client	Required to install VCS Cluster Manager (Java console) and Veritas Enterprise Administrator console, which are used during configuring high availability. Also required to install the Solutions Configuration Center which provides information and wizards to assist configuration.
Global Cluster Option	Required for a disaster recovery configuration only.
Veritas Volume Replicator	If you plan to use VVR for replication, select the option to install VVR.
High Availability Hardware Replication Agents	If you plan to use hardware replication, select the appropriate hardware replication agent.

For more information see the *SFW HA Installation and Upgrade Guide*.

- Configure the cluster with the VCS Cluster Configuration Wizard (VCW). Ensure that the name you assign to the secondary site cluster is different from the name assigned to the primary site cluster. See “[Configuring the cluster](#)” on page 133. You do not need to configure the GCO option while configuring the cluster.

## Creating a parallel environment on the secondary site

After setting up high availability for SQL Server on the primary site, use the guidelines in this chapter to complete the same tasks on the secondary site, as follows:

- Configure the disk groups and volumes  
During the creation of disk groups and volumes for SQL on the secondary site, make sure the following is exactly the same as the cluster on the primary site:
  - Cluster disk group name
  - Volume sizes
  - Volume names
  - Drive lettersSee “[Configuring cluster disk groups and volumes for SQL Server](#)” on page 117.
- Install and configure SQL Server on the first node  
Select the same options at the secondary site as you did at the primary site. The virtual server name must be unique within the cluster and must be the same as the virtual name of the SQL Server in the primary site. The instance name must be the same on the primary site and secondary site. See “[Installing and configuring SQL Server 2005 on the first cluster node](#)” on page 155. See “[Installing and configuring SQL Server 2000 on the first cluster node](#)” on page 153.
- Install and configure SQL Server on the second or additional failover nodes  
See “[Installing SQL Server on the second cluster node](#)” on page 157.
- Configure the SQL Server service group
  - Before you begin to configure the service group on the secondary site, offline the SQL Server resource, the SQL virtual server name resource, the MSSearch resource (if present), and the SQL virtual IP resource on

the primary site. The remaining resources should be online, including the VMDg resource.

- The service group name, virtual computer name, and IP address must be the same on both the primary site and secondary site.

See “[Configuring the VCS SQL Server service group](#)” on page 164.

You can configure high availability for MSDTC either before or after configuring high availability for Microsoft SQL. As when configuring high availability for Microsoft SQL, use the same configuration on the secondary site as on the primary site.

## Setting up the Replicated Data Sets (RDS)

For each disk group you created for the application, you set up a Replicated Data Set (RDS) on the primary and secondary zones. The Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard enables you to configure an RDS for both zones.

### Prerequisites for setting up the RDS for the primary and secondary zones

Before you run the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard, verify the following:

- Verify that the data volumes are not of the following types as VVR does not support these types of volumes:
  - Storage Foundation for Windows (software) RAID 5 volumes
  - Volumes with a Dirty Region Log (DRL)
  - Volumes that are already part of another RVG
  - Volumes names containing a comma
- Verify that the cluster disk group is imported on the primary and secondary site

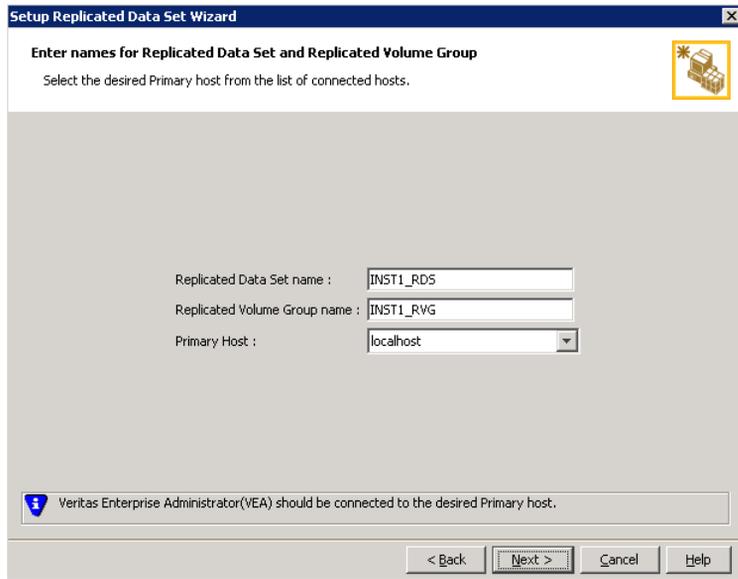
### Creating the Replicated Data Sets

#### To create the Replicated Data Set

- 1 From the cluster node on the Primary where the cluster disk group is imported, launch the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA):
  - Use the VEA console to launch the Setup Replicated Data Set Wizard.  
*OR*
  - Launch the VEA by clicking **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Storage Foundation > Veritas Enterprise Administrator**.

From the VEA console, click **View > Connection > Replication Network**.

- 2 Right-click **Replication Network** and select **Set up Replicated Data Set**.
- 3 Read the Welcome page and click **Next**.
- 4 Specify names for the Replicated Data Set (RDS) and Replicated Volume Group (RVG).

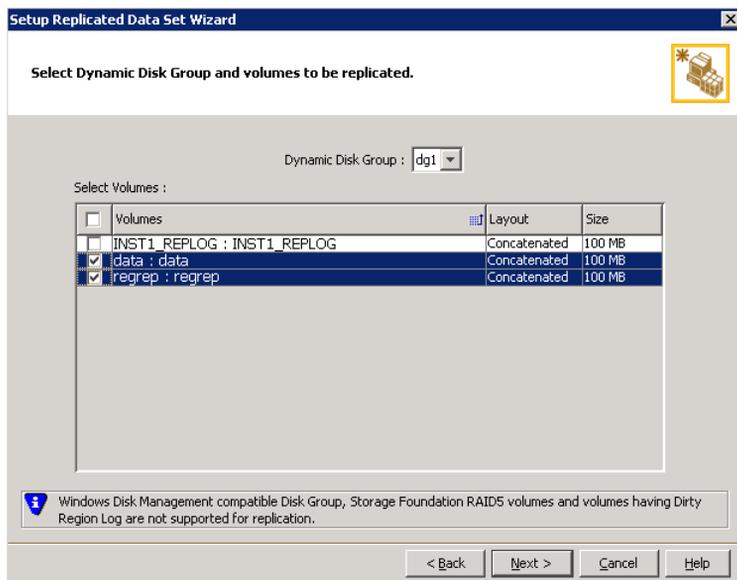


By default, the local host is selected as the **Primary Host**. To specify a different host name, make sure the required host is connected to the VEA console and select it in the **Primary Host** list.

If the required primary host is not connected to the VEA console, it does not appear in the drop-down list of the Primary Host field. Use the VEA console to connect to the host.

- 5 Click **Next**.

- 6 Select from the table the dynamic disk group and data volumes that will undergo replication.

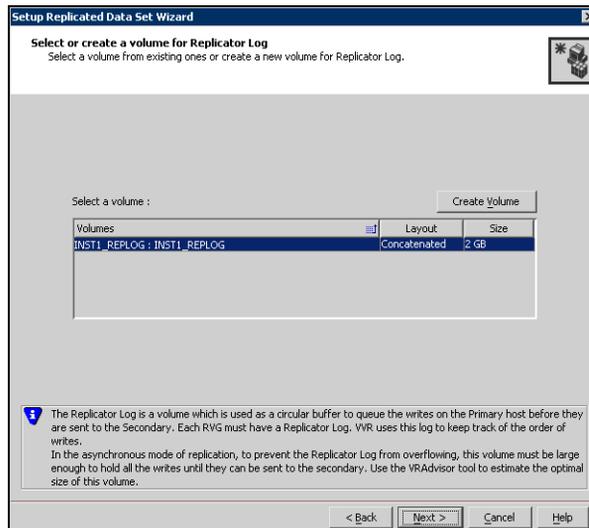


To select multiple volumes, press the Shift or Control key while using the up or down arrow keys.

By default, a mirrored DCM log is automatically added for all selected volumes. If disk space is inadequate to create a DCM log with two plexes, a single plex is created.

- 7 Click **Next**.

8 Complete the select or create a volume for Replicator Log page as follows:



To select an existing volume

- Select the volume for the Replicator Log in the table (INST1\_REPLOG). If the volume does not appear in the table, click **Back** and verify that the Replicator Log volume was not selected on the previous page.
- Click **Next**.

**To create a new volume**

- Click **Create Volume** and enter the following information in the dialog box that displays.

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Name</b>   | Enter the name for the volume in the <b>Name</b> field. |
| <b>Size</b>   | Enter a size for the volume in the <b>Size</b> field.   |
| <b>Layout</b> | Select the desired volume layout.                       |

**Disk Selection**

Enables you to specify the disk selection method.

- Enable the **Thin Provisioned Disks Only** checkbox to ensure that the Replicator Log volume is created only on Thin Provisioned (TP) disks.

**Note:** The checkbox will remain disabled if the diskgroup does not have any TP disk.

If this option is selected along with the **Select disks automatically** option, then the Replicator Log volume will be created only on TP disks. However, if you enable this checkbox along with **Select disks manually** option, then the user can select only TP disks from **Available Disks**.

For more information on Thin Provisioning refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

- Choose the **Select disks automatically** option if you want VVR to select the disks.
- Choose the **Select disks manually** option to use specific disks from the Available disks pane for creating the volume. Either double-click on it or select **Add** to move the disks into the Selected disks pane.

- Click **OK** to create the Replicator Log volume.
- Click **Next** in the **Select or create a volume for Replicator Log** dialog box.

9 Review the information on the summary page and click **Create Primary RVG**.

10 After the Primary RVG has been created successfully, VVR displays the following message:

RDS with Primary RVG has been created successfully. Do you want to add Secondary host to this RDS for replication now?

Click **No** to exit the Setup Replicated Data Set wizard without adding the Secondary host. To add the Secondary host later, use the **Add Secondary** option from the RDS right-click menu.

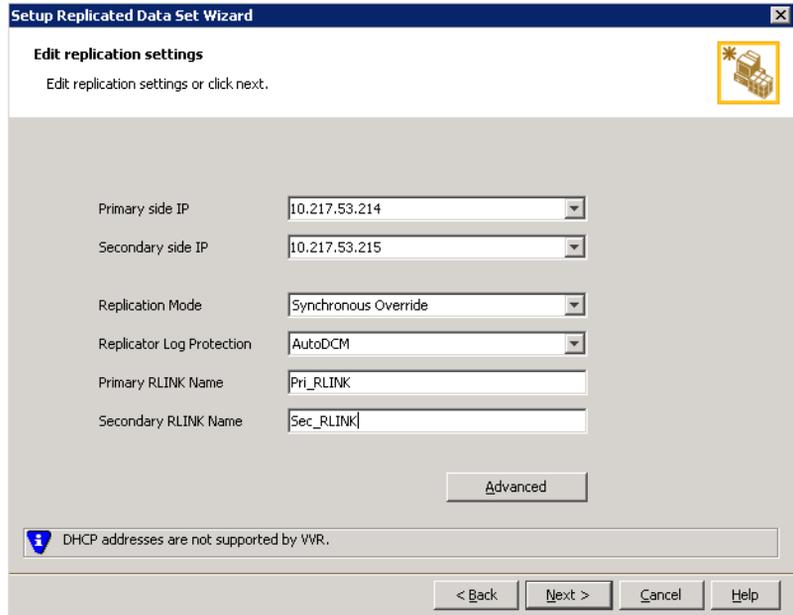
Click **Yes** to add the Secondary host to the Primary RDS now. The Specify Secondary host for replication page appears.

11 On the Specify Secondary host for replication page, enter the name or IP address of the Secondary host in the **Secondary Host** field. Click **Next**. If the Secondary host is not connected to VEA, the wizard tries to connect it when you click **Next**. This wizard allows you to specify only one Secondary host. Additional Secondary hosts can be added using the Add Secondary option from the RDS right-click menu.

Wait till the connection process is complete and then click **Next** again.

- 12 If only a disk group without any data volumes or Replicator Log, as on the Primary host exists on the Secondary, then VVR displays a message. Read the message carefully.  
The option to automatically create volumes on the Secondary host is available only if the disks that are part of the disk group have:
  - the same or larger amount of space as that on the Primary
  - Enough space to create volumes with the same layout as on the PrimaryOtherwise, the RDS setup wizard enables you to create the required volumes manually.
  - Click **Yes** to automatically create the Secondary data volumes and the Replicator Log.
  - Click **No** to create the Secondary data volumes and the Replicator Log manually, using the Volume Information on the connected hosts page.
- 13 The Volume Information on connected hosts page appears. This page displays information on the availability of volumes on the Secondary nodes, if the Primary and Secondary hosts are connected to VEA.  
This page does not appear if all the required volumes that are available on the Primary host are also available on the Secondary hosts.
  - If the required data volumes and the Replicator Log have not been created on the Secondary host, then the page displays the appropriate message against the volume name on the Secondary.
  - If an error occurs or a volume needs to be created, a volume displays with a red icon and a description of the situation. To address the error, or to create a new Replicator Log volume on the secondary site, click the volume on the secondary site, click the available task button and follow the wizard.  
Depending on the discrepancies between the volumes on the primary site and the secondary site, you may have to create a new volume, recreate or resize a volume (change attributes), or remove either a DRL or DCM log.  
When all the replicated volumes meet the replication requirements and display a green check mark, click **Next**.
  - If all the data volumes to be replicated meet the requirements, this screen does not occur.

- 14 Complete the Edit replication settings page to specify the basic and advanced replication settings for a Secondary host as follows:



- To modify each of the default values listed on this page, select the required value from the drop-down list for each property. If you do not wish to modify basic properties then replication can be started with the default values when you click **Next**.

**Primary side IP** Enter the virtual IP address for the Primary IP resource that will be used for replication. If there is more than one IP address available for replication, you can choose the one that you want to use from the drop-down list. If the required IP address is not displayed in the list then edit the field to add the IP address.

**Secondary side IP** Enter the virtual IP address on the Secondary that is to be used for replication. If there is more than one IP address available for replication, you can choose the one that you want to use from the drop-down list. If the required IP address is not displayed in the list then edit the field to add the IP address.

Replication Mode Select the required mode of replication: **Synchronous Override, Synchronous, or Asynchronous**. The default is synchronous override.

**Synchronous Override** enables synchronous updates under typical operating conditions. If the Secondary site is disconnected from the Primary site, and write operations occur on the Primary site, the mode of replication temporarily switches to Asynchronous.

**Synchronous** determines updates from the application on the Primary site are completed only after the Secondary site successfully receives the updates.

**Asynchronous** determines updates from the application on the Primary site are completed after VVR updates in the Replicator Log. From there, VVR writes the data to the data volume and replicates the updates to the secondary site asynchronously.

If the Secondary is set to the synchronous mode of replication and is disconnected, the Primary data volumes with NTFS file systems may be displayed with the status as `MISSING`.

Replicator Log Protection The **AutoDCM** is the default selected mode for the Replicator Log overflow protection when all the volumes in the Primary RVG have a DCM log. The DCM is enabled when the Replicator Log overflows.

The **DCM** option enables the Replicator Log protection for the Secondary host when the Replicator Log overflows, and the connection between the Primary and Secondary is lost. This option is available only if all the data volumes under the Primary RVG have a DCM Log associated with them.

The **Off** option disables Replicator Log Overflow protection.

In the case of the Bunker node. Replicator Log protection is set to **Off**, by default. Thus, if the Primary RLINK overflows due to the Bunker RLINK, then this RLINK is detached.

The **Override** option enables log protection. If the Secondary node is still connected and the Replicator Log is about to overflow then the writes are stalled until a predetermined amount of space, that is, 5% or 20 MB (whichever is lesser) becomes available in the Replicator Log.

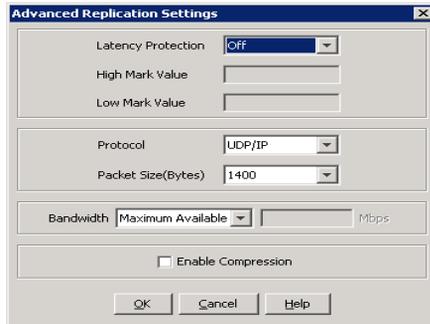
If the Secondary becomes inactive due to disconnection or administrative action then Replicator Log protection is disabled, and the Replicator Log overflows.

The **Fail** option enables log protection. If the log is about to overflow the writes are stalled until a predetermined amount of space, that is, 5% or 20 MB (whichever is lesser) becomes available in the Replicator Log. If the connection between Primary and Secondary RVG is broken, then, any new writes to the Primary RVG are failed.

Primary RLINK Name	This option enables you to specify a Primary RLINK name of your choice. If you do not specify any name then VVR assigns a default name.
Secondary RLINK Name	This option enables you to specify a Secondary RLINK name of your choice. If you do not specify any name then VVR assigns a default name.

Click **Next** to start replication with the default settings.

- 15 Click **Advanced** to specify advanced replication settings. Edit the replication settings for a secondary host as needed.



**Latency protection** Determines the extent of stalling write operations on the primary site to allow the secondary site to “catch up” with the updates before new write operations can occur.

- **Off** is the default option and disables latency protection.
- **Fail** enables latency protection. If the number of outstanding write operations reaches the **High Mark Value** (described below), and the secondary site is connected, VVR stalls the subsequent write operations until the number of outstanding write operations is lowered to the **Low Mark Value** (described below). If the secondary site is disconnected, the subsequent write operations fail.
- **Override** enables latency protection. This option resembles the Off option when the secondary site is disconnected, and the Fail option when the secondary site is connected.

**Caution:** Throttling of write operations affects application performance on the primary site; use this protection only when necessary according to replication throughput and application write patterns.

**High Mark Value** Is enabled only when either the Override or Fail latency protection option is selected. This value triggers the stalling of write operations and specifies the maximum number of pending updates on the Replicator Log waiting for replication to the secondary site. The default value is 10000, the maximum number of updates allowed in a Replicator Log.

**Low Mark Value** Is enabled only when either the Override or Fail latency protection options is selected. After reaching the High Mark Value, write operations on the Replicator Log are stalled until the number of pending updates drops to an acceptable point at which the secondary site can “catch up” to the activity on the primary site; this acceptable point is determined by the Low Mark Value. The default value is 9950.

**Caution:** When determining the high mark and low mark values for latency protection, select a range that is sufficient but not too large to prevent long durations of throttling for write operations.

**Protocol** UDP/IP is the default protocol for replication.

**Packet Size** Updates to the host on the secondary site are sent in packets; the default size 1400 bytes. The option to select the packet size is enabled only when UDP/IP protocol is selected.

**Bandwidth** By default, VVR uses the maximum available bandwidth. To control the bandwidth used, specify the bandwidth limit in Mbps.

**Enable Compression** Enable this checkbox if you want to enable Compression for the secondary host.

Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

16 Click **Next**.

17 On the **Start Replication** page, select **Start Replication**.

**Synchronize Automatically** If virtual IPs have been created, select the **Synchronize Automatically** option, which is the default recommended for initial setup to start synchronization of Secondary and start replication immediately.

If the virtual IPs for replication are not yet created, automatic synchronization remains paused and resumes after the Replication Service Group is created and brought online.

When this option is selected, VVR by default performs intelligent synchronization to replicate only those blocks on a volume that are being used by the file system. If required, you can disable intelligent synchronization.

**Note:** Intelligent synchronization is applicable only to volumes with the NTFS file systems and not to raw volumes or volumes with FAT/FAT32 file systems.

Synchronize from  
Checkpoint

If you want to use this method, then you must first create a checkpoint.

If you have considerable amount of data on the Primary data volumes, then you may first want to synchronize the secondary for existing data using the backup-restore method with checkpoint. After the restore is complete, use the Synchronize from Checkpoint option to start replication from checkpoint to synchronize the secondary with the writes that happened when backup-restore was in progress.

For information on synchronizing from checkpoints, refer *Veritas Storage Foundation™ Volume Replicator Administrator's Guide*.

- To add the secondary without starting replication, deselect the **Start Replication** option. You can start replication later by using the **Start Replication** option from the Secondary RVG right-click menu. Click **Next** to display the Summary page.
- 18** Review the information.  
Click **Back** to change any information you had specified and click **Finish** to add the secondary host to the RDS and exit the wizard.

## Creating the VVR RVG service group

You create a replication service group, also known as an RVG service group.

Before creating the service group verify the following:

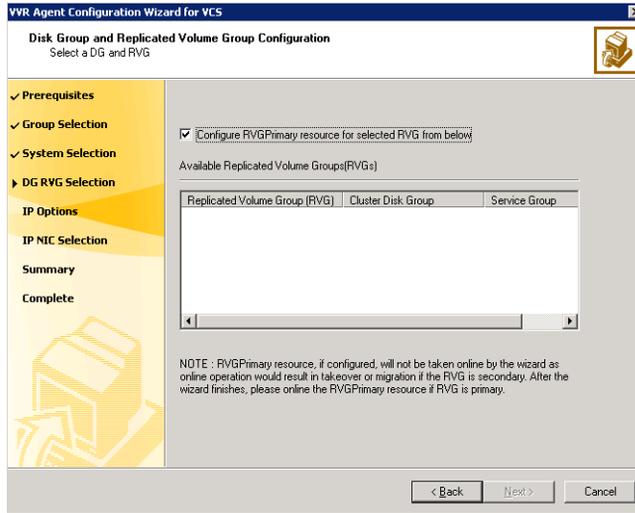
- Verify that the disk group is imported on the node on which you want to create the Replication Service Group.
- Verify VCS is running, by running the following command on the host on which the you intend to run the Volume Replicator Agent Configuration Wizard.

```
> hasys -state
```

### To create a replication service group

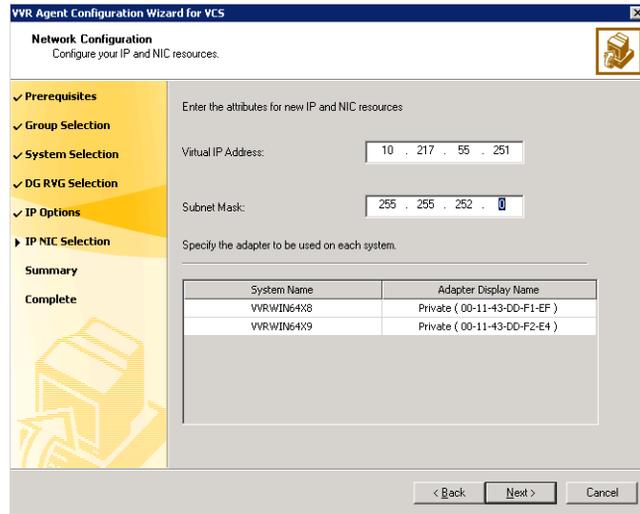
- 1 From the active node of the cluster at the primary site, click **Start > All Programs > Symantec > Veritas Cluster Server > Configuration Tools > Volume Replicator Agent Configuration Wizard** to launch the configuration wizard.
- 2 Review the requirements on the Welcome page and click **Next**.
- 3 In the Wizard Options panel, click **Create a new replication service group** and click **Next**.
- 4 Specify the service group name and system priority list as follows:
  - Enter the service group name (INST1\_RVG\_GRP).
  - In the Available Cluster Systems box, click the nodes on which to configure the service group, and click the right-arrow icon to move the nodes to the service group's system list. Make sure that the set of nodes selected for the replication service group is the same or a superset of nodes selected for the SQL Server service group. Ensure that the nodes are in the same priority order.
  - To remove a node from the service group's system list, click the node in the **Systems in Priority Order** box, and click the left arrow icon.
  - To change the priority of a node in the system list, click the node in the **Systems in Priority Order** box, then click the up and down arrow icons. The node at the top of the list has the highest priority.
  - Click **Next**.
- 5 A message appears, indicating that the configuration will be changed from Read Only to Read/Write. Click **Yes** to continue.

- 6 In the Disk Group and Replicated Volume Group Configuration panel, make the following selections:



- Select **Configure RVGPrimary resource for selected RVG**.  
This resource is required when you want to configure your setup to automatically enable takeover in case of a failure of the Primary cluster. The `RVGPrimary` resource is created in the application service group and replaces the `VMDg` resource.
  - Select the replicated volume group for which you want to configure the RVG primary resource.  
For example, select `INST1_RVG`.
  - Click **Next**.
- 7 In the IP Resource Options panel, select **Create a new IP resource** and click **Next**.

- 8 In the Network Configuration panel, enter the network information as follows:



- Verify or enter the virtual IP address; use the IP address specified as the primary IP address when you configured the RDS.
  - Specify the subnet mask.
  - Specify the adapters for each system in the configuration.
  - Click **Next**.
- 9 Review the summary of the service group configuration as follows:
    - The **Resources** box lists the configured resources. Click a resource to view its attributes and their configured values in the Attributes box.
    - If necessary, change the resource names; the wizard assigns unique names to resources based on their respective name rules.
    - To edit a resource name, click the resource name and modify it. Press **Enter** after editing each resource name. To cancel editing a resource name, press **Esc**.

Click **Next** to create the replication service group.
  - 10 A warning informing you that the service group will be created is displayed. When prompted, click **Yes** to create the service group.
  - 11 Click **Finish** to bring the replication service group online.
  - 12 Check the prerequisites, then repeat the wizard at the secondary site, specifying the appropriate values.  
 The name for the application service group must be the same on both sites.

The SQL service group (for example, INST1\_SG) is dependent on the replication service group (for example, INST1\_RVG\_GRP).

# Configuring the global cluster option for wide-area failover

The Global Cluster option is required to manage global clustering for wide-area disaster recovery.

Creating a global cluster environment involves the following:

- Connecting standalone clusters by adding a remote cluster to a local cluster.
- Converting the local service group that is common to all the clusters to a global service group.

Use the VCS Java Console or the Cluster Management Console (Single Cluster Mode) also referred to as Web Console, to perform global cluster operations; this guide only provides procedures for the Java Console.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information on GCO operations available from the Java and Web Consoles.

## Prerequisites

Creating a global cluster environment requires the following:

- All service groups properly configured and able to come online.
- The service group serving as the global group has the same unique name across all applicable clusters.
- The clusters use the same version of VCS.
- The clusters use the same operating system.
- The clusters are standalone and do not already belong to a global cluster environment.
- The names of the clusters at the primary and secondary sites and the virtual IP addresses associated with them are registered in the DNS with reverse lookup.

## Linking clusters: Adding a remote cluster to a local cluster

The VCS Cluster Manager (Java Console) provides a wizard to create global clusters by linking standalone clusters or bringing a standalone cluster into an existing global environment.

Note the following uses of the wizard:

- If you are creating a global cluster environment for the first time with two standalone clusters, run the wizard from either the cluster on the primary site or the cluster on the secondary site.
- If you are adding a standalone cluster to an existing global cluster environment, run the wizard from a cluster already in the global cluster environment.

The following information is required for the Remote Cluster Configuration Wizard in VCS Cluster Manager:

- The active host name or IP address of each cluster in the global configuration and of the cluster being added to the configuration.
- The user name and password of the administrator for each cluster in the configuration.
- The user name and password of the administrator for the cluster being added to the configuration.

Symantec does not support adding a cluster that is already part of a global cluster environment. To merge the clusters of one global cluster environment (for example, cluster A and cluster B) with the clusters of another global environment (for example, cluster C and cluster D), separate cluster C and cluster D into standalone clusters and add them one by one to the environment containing cluster A and cluster B.

### To add a remote cluster in Cluster Explorer

- 1 From Cluster Explorer, click **Add/Delete Remote Cluster** on the **Edit** menu.  
or  
From the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, right-click the cluster name, and click **Add/Delete Remote Cluster**.
- 2 Review the required information for the Remote Cluster Configuration Wizard and then click **Next**.
- 3 In the Wizard Options panel, click **Add Cluster**, then click **Next**.
- 4 In the New Cluster Details panel, enter the details of the new cluster.  
If the cluster is not running in secure mode, specify the following:

- Enter the host name of a cluster system, an IP address of a cluster system, or the IP address of the cluster that will join the global environment.
- If necessary, change the default port number.
- Enter the user name and the password.
- Click **Next**.

If the cluster is running in secure mode, specify the following:

- Enter the host name of a cluster system, an IP address of a cluster system, or the IP address of the cluster that will join the global environment.
- Verify the port number.
- Choose to connect to the remote cluster with the credentials used for the current cluster connection, or enter new credentials, including the user name, password, and the domain.
- If you connected to the remote cluster earlier through the wizard, you can use the credentials from the previous connection.
- Click **Next**.

- 5 Click **Finish**. After running the wizard, the configurations on all the relevant clusters are in read-write mode; the wizard does not close the configurations.
- 6 Verify that the heartbeat connection between clusters is alive. From the command window enter `hahb -display`. The state attribute in the output should show **alive**.  
If the state is **unknown**, then offline and online the ClusterService group.

## Converting a local service group to a global service group

After linking the clusters, use the Global Group Configuration wizard to convert a local service group that is common to the global clusters to a global group.

This wizard also enables you to convert global groups into local groups.

### To convert a local service group to a global group

- 1 From Cluster Explorer, click **Configure Global Groups** on the **Edit** menu.  
or  
From the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, right-click the cluster, and click **Configure Global Groups**.  
or

From the Cluster Explorer configuration tree, right-click the service group, click **Configure As Global**, and proceed to step 3.

- 2 Review the information required for the Global Group Configuration wizard and click **Next**.
- 3 Enter the details of the service group to modify, as follows:
  - Click the name of the service group that will be converted from a local group to a global group, or vice versa.
  - From the Available Clusters box, click the clusters on which the group can come online. Click the right arrow to move the cluster name to the Clusters for Service Group box; for global to local cluster conversion, click the left arrow to move the cluster name back to the Available Clusters box. A priority number (starting with 0) indicates the cluster on which the group will attempt to come online. If necessary, double-click the entry in the **Priority** column and enter the new value.
  - Select the policy for cluster failover as follows:

Manual	Prevents a group from automatically failing over to another cluster.
Auto	Enables a group to automatically fail over to another cluster if it is unable to fail over within the cluster, or if the entire cluster fails.
Connected	Enables a group to automatically fail over to another cluster if it is unable to fail over within the cluster.

- Click **Next**.
- 4 Enter or review the connection details for each cluster. Click the **Configure** icon to review the remote cluster information for each cluster, as follows:
  - 5 Click **Next**, then click **Finish**.

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Cluster not in secure mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Enter the IP address of the remote cluster, the IP address of a cluster system, or the host name of a cluster system.</li><li>■ Verify the port number.</li><li>■ Enter the user name.</li><li>■ Enter the password.</li><li>■ Click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>■ Repeat these steps for each cluster in the global environment.</li></ul> |
|----------------------------|--|

- Cluster in secure mode
- Enter the IP address of the remote cluster, the IP address of a cluster system, or the host name of a cluster system.
  - Verify the port number.
  - Choose to connect to the remote cluster with the credentials used for the current cluster connection, or enter new credentials, including the user name, password, and domain.
  - If you connected to the remote cluster earlier through the wizard, you can use the credentials from the previous connection.
  - Click **OK**.
  - Repeat these steps for each cluster in the global environment.

At this point, you must bring the global service group online from Cluster Explorer.

## Bringing a global service group online

After converting the local service group that is common to the global clusters to a global group, use the Cluster Explorer to bring the global service group online.

### To bring a remote global service group online from Cluster Explorer

- 1 In the Service Groups tab of the configuration tree, right-click the service group.  
or  
Click a cluster in the configuration tree, click the **Service Groups** tab, and right-click the service group icon in the view panel.
- 2 Click **Online**, and click **Remote online**.
- 3 In the Online global group dialog box, specify the following:
  - Click the remote cluster to bring the group online.
  - Click the specific system, or click **Any System**, to bring the group online.
  - Click **OK**



# Index

## A

- active/active configuration
  - illustration 82
  - IP addresses 84
  - key information 84
  - service group requirements 164
- active/active environment
  - definition of 26
- active/passive configuration
  - illustration 80
  - overview 80

## C

- campus cluster
  - defined 19
  - failover using the forceimport attribute 93
  - forceimport 188
  - new installation 185
  - overview 21
  - site failure 188
  - SQL Server service group, modifying the IP resource 186
  - verifying cluster configuration 187
- cloning for DR
  - secondary storage (array-based replication) 264
  - secondary storage (VVR replication) 260
  - service group for SQL Server 268
- cluster
  - configure LLT over ethernet 137
  - configure LLT over UDP 138
- clusters
  - assigning user privileges 255
  - configuring the cluster 133
  - configuring the hardware and network 108
  - setting the internal name of the SQL Server 2000 clustered instance 158
  - switching online nodes (RDC) 237
  - verifying campus cluster configuration 187
  - verifying the HA failover configuration 171

- verifying the primary site configuration for DR 247
- configuration overview
  - SQL Server
    - disaster recovery 100
    - high availability 80
- configure
  - LLT over ethernet 137
  - LLT over UDP using VCW 138
- configure cluster
  - ethernet 137
  - UDP 138
- configuring standalone SQL Server 38
- converting standalone SQL Server to HA
  - moving data files and databases 152

## D

- database
  - new database for SQL Server 161
- disaster recovery (DR)
  - cloning secondary storage (VVR replication) 260
  - cloning SQL Server service group 268
  - configuring GCO with DR wizard 286
  - configuring replication with DR wizard 272
  - creating temporary storage (array-based replication) 264
  - deploying for SQL Server 241, 325
  - DR wizard overview 256
  - DR wizard requirements 256
  - illustrated 28
  - IP addresses 103
  - multiple sites 292
  - setting up a secondary SQL Server site 256, 330
  - typical configuration 28
  - verifying HA configuration at primary site 247
- Disaster Recovery configuration 28

**disk groups**

- cloning for secondary site (array-based replication) 264
- cloning for secondary site (VVR replication) 260
- creating 123
- deporting 132
- multiple instances 121
- overview 117
- preconditions 118
- sample configuration 122

**DR wizard**

- cloning secondary storage
  - array-based replication 264
  - VVR replication 260
- cloning SQL Server service group 268
- configuring replication and GCO 272
- overview 256
- requirements 256

**drive letters**

- adding to mount volumes 131

**driver signing options**

- resetting 115

**E****EMC SRDF**

- configure SRDF replication with the DR wizard 280
- requirements for DR wizard 251

**F****Fire Drill Wizard**

- actions 309
- changing a fire drill configuration 317
- deleting the configuration 320
- overview 298
- preparing the configuration 309
- prerequisites for a fire drill 306, 307, 308
- restoring the prepared configuration 319
- running a fire drill 315

**forceimport**

- attribute for campus cluster 93
- defined 93
- setting after a site failure 188

**G****Global Cluster Option (GCO)**

- configuring with the DR wizard 286
- prerequisites 286, 347
- secure configuration 290

**H****hardware configuration for a cluster 108****high availability (HA)**

- defined 18
- verifying the failover 171

**Hitachi TrueCopy**

- configure replication with the DR wizard 283
- requirements for DR wizard 252

**I****installing SFW HA**

- HA 110

**installing SQL Server**

- multiple instances 152
- second node 157
- secondary site 268

**installing SQL Server 2000**

- first node 153

**installing SQL Server 2005**

- first node 155

**internal name**

- setting for the SQL 2000 clustered instance 158

**IP addresses**

- active/active configuration 84
- active/passive configuration 81
- disaster recovery configuration 103

**L****LLT over ethernet**

- configuring using VCW 137

**LLT over UDP**

- configuring using VCW 138

**M**

- MSDTC
  - configuring the client 177
  - creating an MSDTC service group 173
  - HA configuration overview 89
  - sample disk group configuration 123
  - service group configuration 89
- multiple DR sites 292
- multiple SQL Server instances
  - assigning the port 162
  - disk groups 121
  - instance name 152
  - service groups 164

**N**

- network configuration for the cluster 108

**P**

- permissions requirements 77
- port assignment for multiple instances 162
- prerequisites
  - MSDTC service group 172
  - service group for SQL Server 165
  - SFW HA 72
- primary host, defined 25
- primary site
  - verifying the cluster configuration 247
- primary system zone 192

**Q**

- Query Analyzer 158

**R**

- replicated data clusters
  - deploying for SQL Server 189
  - overview of setup 98
  - primary system zone 192
  - secondary system zone 193
- replication
  - configuring for EMC SRDF with the DR wizard 280
  - configuring for HTC with the DR wizard 283
  - configuring for VVR with DR wizard 272
  - defined 22
  - setting up a Replicated Data Set (RDS) 203, 331

## requirements

- permissions 77
  - SQL 2000 software 73
  - SQL 2005 software 74
- requirements, additional for SFW HA 77
- requirements, network 76
- requirements, system 76
- resetting
  - driver signing options 115
- resources
  - adding to SQL service group HA 181

**S**

- sample configurations
  - SQL Server
    - DR 102
    - HA active/active 82
    - HA active/passive 81
    - RDC 96
    - standalone SQL Server conversion to HA 87
  - secondary host, defined 25
  - secondary site
    - setting up for disaster recovery 256
  - secondary zone
    - setting up for replicated data cluster 193
- secure clusters
  - assigning user privileges 255
- secure GCO, establishing 290
- Security Services
  - configuring 140
- service groups
  - cloning for SQL Server 268
  - configuring for SQL Server 164
  - dependencies 103, 293
  - modifying for SQL Server 181
  - prerequisites for configuring for SQL Server 165
  - priority order 164
  - requirements for active/active configurations 164
  - requirements for multiple instances 164
  - VCS SQL Configuration wizard 166
- setting bandwidth
  - using RDS wizard 277

- SFW HA
    - additional requirements 77
    - best practices 78
    - network requirements 76
    - system requirements 76
  - SFW HA installation 110
  - site failure, forceimport attribute 188
  - software requirements
    - SQL 2000 73
    - SQL 2005 74
  - Solutions Configuration Center
    - context sensitivity 57
    - overview 55
    - running wizards remotely 63
    - starting 56
    - wizard descriptions 63
    - workflow for active/active configuration 86
  - SQL cluster configuration
    - Disaster Recovery 28
  - SQL Server
    - cloning service group 268
    - configuring network and storage 108
    - configuring service group 164
    - creating a new database 161
    - DR configuration overview 100
    - DR sample configuration 102
    - HA configuration overview 80
    - HA sample configuration 81, 83
    - installing first node 153, 155
    - installing on secondary (DR) site 268
    - installing second node
      - HA 157
    - new database 161
    - service group 164
      - IP resource, modifying 186
    - tasks for setting up a secondary site 330
    - tasks for setting up an RDC secondary zone 193
    - user-defined database 161
  - SQL Server 2008 Configuration Wizard 166
  - SRDF
    - configuring replication with the DR wizard 280
    - requirements for DR wizard 251
  - standalone SQL Server
    - sample HA configuration 87
  - storage cloning with the DR wizard
    - for array-based replication 264
    - for VVR replication 260
  - storage hardware configuration 108
  - switching online nodes 237
  - system zone 192
- T**
- tempdb database (HA) 162
- U**
- user privilege assignment 255
  - utilities
    - Veritas Application Manager 179
- V**
- VCS
    - configuring the cluster 133
    - configuring the SQL Server service group 164
    - switching online nodes 237
  - VCS Configuration Wizard 133
  - VCS utilities
    - Veritas Application Manager 179
  - Veritas Application Manager utility 179
  - viewing distributed transactions 179
  - virtual DTC viewer 179
  - volumes
    - adding drive letters 131
    - considerations for VVR and disaster recovery 120
    - creating on a cluster disk group 125
    - multiple instances 121
    - preconditions on a cluster disk group 118
    - sample configuration 122
  - VVR
    - configuration diagram 101
    - configuring replication with DR wizard 272
    - moving tempdb to separate volume 162
    - setting up RDS 203, 331
    - VxSAS 248
  - VxSAS 248
- Z**
- zone 192